# Package 'VineCopula'

September 18, 2018

```
Title Statistical Inference of Vine Copulas
Version 2.1.8
Description Provides tools for the statistical analysis of vine copula models.
      The package includes tools for parameter estimation, model selection,
      simulation, goodness-of-fit tests, and visualization. Tools for estimation,
      selection and exploratory data analysis of bivariate copula models are also
      provided.
Depends R (>= 3.1.0)
Imports graphics, grDevices, stats, utils, MASS, mytnorm, network,
      methods, copula (>= 0.999-16), kdecopula (>= 0.8.0), ADGofTest,
      lattice, doParallel, parallel, foreach
Suggests CDVine, TSP, shiny, testthat, numDeriv
License GPL (>= 2)
LazyLoad yes
BugReports https://github.com/tnagler/VineCopula/issues
URL https://github.com/tnagler/VineCopula
RoxygenNote 6.1.0
NeedsCompilation yes
Author Ulf Schepsmeier [aut],
      Jakob Stoeber [aut],
      Eike Christian Brechmann [aut],
      Benedikt Graeler [aut],
      Thomas Nagler [aut, cre],
      Tobias Erhardt [aut],
      Carlos Almeida [ctb],
      Aleksey Min [ctb, ths],
      Claudia Czado [ctb, ths],
      Mathias Hofmann [ctb],
      Matthias Killiches [ctb],
      Harry Joe [ctb],
      Thibault Vatter [ctb]
```

Type Package

Maintainer Thomas Nagler < thomas.nagler@tum.de>

Repository CRAN

**Date/Publication** 2018-09-18 08:30:03 UTC

# ${\sf R}$ topics documented:

VineCopula-package																4
as.copuladata														 		6
BB1Copula																7
BB1Copula-class																8
BB6Copula														 		8
BB6Copula-class																9
BB7Copula																10
BB7Copula-class														 		11
BB8Copula																12
BB8Copula-class																13
BetaMatrix																13
$BiCop\ \dots\dots\dots$																14
BiCopCDF																17
$BiCopCheck \ . \ . \ . \ .$																19
BiCopChiPlot																21
BiCopCompare																23
$BiCopCondSim\ .\ .\ .$																24
BiCopDeriv																
BiCopDeriv2																29
BiCopEst																31
BiCopEstList																35
BiCopGofTest																37
BiCopHfunc														 		40
BiCopHfuncDeriv														 		43
$Bi Cop H func Deriv 2 \ . \\$																45
BiCopHinv																48
$BiCopIndTest\ .\ .\ .\ .$																51
BiCopKDE														 		52
BiCopKPlot														 		53
BiCopLambda														 		55
$BiCopMetaContour\ . \\$														 		57
BiCopName																60
BiCopPar2Beta														 		62
BiCopPar2TailDep .														 		65
BiCopPar2Tau																
BiCopPDF														 		71
BiCopSelect																73
BiCopSim																77
BiCopTau2Par																79
BiCopVuongClarke .																81
C2RVine																

Index

155

contour.RVineMatrix
copulaFromFamilyIndex
D2RVine
daxreturns
ddCopula
joeBiCopula
joeBiCopula-class
pairs.copuladata
plot.BiCop
pobs
RVineAIC
RVineClarkeTest
RVineCopSelect
RVineCor2pcor
RVineGofTest
RVineGrad
RVineHessian
RVineLogLik
RVineMatrix
RVineMatrixCheck
RVineMatrixNormalize
RVineMatrixSample
RVineMLE
RVinePar2Beta
RVinePar2Tau
RVinePDF
RVinePIT
RVineSeqEst
RVineSim
RVineStdError
RVineStructureSelect
RVineTreePlot
RVineVuongTest
surClaytonCopula
surClaytonCopula-class
surGumbelCopula
surGumbelCopula-class
TauMatrix
tawnT1Copula
tawnT1Copula-class
tawnT2Copula
tawnT2Copula-class
vineCopula
vineCopula-class
The Copular Class

4 VineCopula-package

VineCopula-package Statistical Inference of Vine Copulas

### Description

Provides tools for the statistical analysis of vine copula models. The package includes tools for parameter estimation, model selection, simulation, goodness-of-fit tests, and visualization. Tools for estimation, selection and exploratory data analysis of bivariate copula models are also provided.

#### **Details**

Vine copulas are a flexible class of dependence models consisting of bivariate building blocks (see e.g., Aas et al., 2009). This package is primarily made for the statistical analysis of vine copula models. The package includes tools for parameter estimation, model selection, simulation, goodness-of-fit tests, and visualization. Tools for estimation, selection and exploratory data analysis of bivariate copula models are also provided.

### The DESCRIPTION file:

Package: VineCopula Type: Package

Title: Statistical Inference of Vine Copulas

Version: 2.1.8

Description: Provides tools for the statistical analysis of vine copula models. The package includes tools for parameter es c(person("Ulf", "Schepsmeier", "ulf.schepsmeier@tum.de", role = "aut"), person("Jakob", "Stoeber", role = "aut")

Depends: R (>= 3.1.0)

Imports: graphics, grDevices, stats, utils, MASS, mvtnorm, network, methods, copula (>= 0.999-16), kdecopula (>= 0.999-16

Suggests: CDVine, TSP, shiny, testthat, numDeriv

License: GPL (>= 2)

LazyLoad: yes

BugReports: https://github.com/tnagler/VineCopula/issues URL: https://github.com/tnagler/VineCopula

RoxygenNote: 6.1.0

Author: Ulf Schepsmeier [aut], Jakob Stoeber [aut], Eike Christian Brechmann [aut], Benedikt Graeler [aut], Thomas

Maintainer: Thomas Nagler <thomas.nagler@tum.de>

#### Remark

The package VineCopula is a continuation of the package CDVine by U. Schepsmeier and E. C. Brechmann (see Brechmann and Schepsmeier (2013)). It includes all functions implemented in CDVine for the bivariate case (BiCop-functions).

#### References

Aas, K., C. Czado, A. Frigessi, and H. Bakken (2009). Pair-copula constructions of multiple dependence. Insurance: Mathematics and Economics 44 (2), 182-198.

Bedford, T. and R. M. Cooke (2001). Probability density decomposition for conditionally dependent random variables modeled by vines. Annals of Mathematics and Artificial intelligence 32, 245-268.

Bedford, T. and R. M. Cooke (2002). Vines - a new graphical model for dependent random variables. Annals of Statistics 30, 1031-1068.

Brechmann, E. C., C. Czado, and K. Aas (2012). Truncated regular vines in high dimensions with applications to financial data. Canadian Journal of Statistics 40 (1), 68-85.

Brechmann, E. C. and C. Czado (2011). Risk management with high-dimensional vine copulas: An analysis of the Euro Stoxx 50. Statistics & Risk Modeling, 30 (4), 307-342.

Brechmann, E. C. and U. Schepsmeier (2013). Modeling Dependence with C- and D-Vine Copulas: The R Package CDVine. Journal of Statistical Software, 52 (3), 1-27. http://www.jstatsoft.org/v52/i03/.

Czado, C., U. Schepsmeier, and A. Min (2012). Maximum likelihood estimation of mixed C-vines with application to exchange rates. Statistical Modelling, 12(3), 229-255.

Dissmann, J. F., E. C. Brechmann, C. Czado, and D. Kurowicka (2013). Selecting and estimating regular vine copulae and application to financial returns. Computational Statistics & Data Analysis, 59 (1), 52-69.

Eschenburg, P. (2013). Properties of extreme-value copulas Diploma thesis, Technische Universitaet Muenchen http://mediatum.ub.tum.de/node?id=1145695

Joe, H. (1996). Families of m-variate distributions with given margins and m(m-1)/2 bivariate dependence parameters. In L. Rueschendorf, B. Schweizer, and M. D. Taylor (Eds.), Distributions with fixed marginals and related topics, pp. 120-141. Hayward: Institute of Mathematical Statistics.

Joe, H. (1997). Multivariate Models and Dependence Concepts. London: Chapman and Hall.

Knight, W. R. (1966). A computer method for calculating Kendall's tau with ungrouped data. Journal of the American Statistical Association 61 (314), 436-439.

Kurowicka, D. and R. M. Cooke (2006). Uncertainty Analysis with High Dimensional Dependence Modelling. Chichester: John Wiley.

Kurowicka, D. and H. Joe (Eds.) (2011). Dependence Modeling: Vine Copula Handbook. Singapore: World Scientific Publishing Co.

Nelsen, R. (2006). An introduction to copulas. Springer

Schepsmeier, U. and J. Stoeber (2014). Derivatives and Fisher information of bivariate copulas. Statistical Papers, 55 (2), 525-542.

http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s00362-013-0498-x.

Schepsmeier, U. (2013) A goodness-of-fit test for regular vine copula models. Preprint http://arxiv.org/abs/1306.0818

Schepsmeier, U. (2015) Efficient information based goodness-of-fit tests for vine copula models with fixed margins. Journal of Multivariate Analysis 138, 34-52.

Stoeber, J. and U. Schepsmeier (2013). Estimating standard errors in regular vine copula models. Computational Statistics, 28 (6), 2679-2707

http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s00180-013-0423-8#.

White, H. (1982) Maximum likelihood estimation of misspecified models, Econometrica, 50, 1-26.

6 as.copuladata

as.copuladata

Copula Data Objects

# Description

The function as copuladata coerces an object (data frame, matrix, list) to a copuladata object.

# Usage

```
as.copuladata(data)
```

# Arguments

data

Either a data.frame, a matrix or a list containing copula data (i.e. data with uniform margins on [0,1]). The list elements have to be vectors of identical length.

# Author(s)

**Tobias Erhardt** 

# See Also

```
pobs, pairs.copuladata
```

```
data(daxreturns)

data <- as(daxreturns, "matrix")
class(as.copuladata(data))

data <- as(daxreturns, "data.frame")
class(as.copuladata(data))

data <- as(daxreturns, "list")
names(data) <- names(daxreturns)
class(as.copuladata(data))</pre>
```

BB1Copula 7

BB1Copula

Constructor of the BB1 Family and Rotated Versions thereof

# Description

Constructs an object of the BB1Copula (survival sur, 90 degree rotated r90 and 270 degree rotated r270) family for given parameters.

### Usage

```
BB1Copula(param = c(1, 1))
```

### **Arguments**

param

The parameter param defines the copula through theta and delta.

#### Value

One of the respective BB1 copula classes (BB1Copula, surBB1Copula, r90BB1Copula, r270BB1Copula).

#### Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

#### References

Joe, H., (1997). Multivariate Models and Dependence Concepts. Monogra. Stat. Appl. Probab. 73, London: Chapman and Hall.

#### See Also

See also BB6Copula, BB7Copula, BB8Copula and joeCopula for further wrapper functions to the VineCopula-package.

```
library(copula)  persp(BB1Copula(c(1,1.5)), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10)) \\ persp(surBB1Copula(c(1,1.5)), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10)) \\ persp(r90BB1Copula(c(-1,-1.5)), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10)) \\ persp(r270BB1Copula(c(-1,-1.5)), dCopula(c(-1,-1.5))) \\ persp(r270BB1Copula(c(-1,-1.5)), dCopula(c(-1,-1.5))) \\ persp(r270BB1Copula(c(-1,-1.5)), dCopula(c(-1,-1.5))) \\ persp(r270BB1Copula(c(-1,-1.5)), dCopula(c(-1,-1.5))) \\ persp(r270BB1Copula(c(-1,-1.5)), dCopula(c(-1,-1.5)) \\ persp(r270BB1Copula(c(-1,-1.5)), dCopula(c(-1,-1.5)) \\ persp(r270BB1Copula(c(-1,-1.5)), dCopula(c(-1,-1.5)) \\ persp(r270BB1Copula(c(-1,-1.5)), dCopula(c(-1,-1.5)) \\ persp(r270BB1Copula(c(-1,-1.5))) \\ persp(r270BB1Copula(c(-1,-1.
```

8 BB6Copula

BB1Copula-class	Classes	"BB1Copula",	"surBB1Copula",	"r90BB1Copula"	and
	"r270BB	31Copula"			

# Description

Wrapper classes representing the BB1, survival BB1, 90 degree and 270 degree rotated BB1 copula families (Joe 1997) from VineCopula-package.

# **Objects from the Classes**

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("BB1Copula", ...), new("surBB1Copula", ...), new("r90BB1Copula", ...) and new("r270BB1Copula", ...) or by the functions BB1Copula, surBB1Copula, r90BB1Copula and r270BB1Copula.

#### Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

#### References

Joe, H., (1997). Multivariate Models and Dependence Concepts. Monogra. Stat. Appl. Probab. 73, London: Chapman and Hall.

# See Also

See also BB6Copula, BB7Copula, BB8Copula and joeCopula for further wrapper classes to the VineCopula-package.

# **Examples**

```
showClass("BB1Copula")
```

BB6Copula

Constructor of the BB6 Family and Rotated Versions thereof

# Description

Constructs an object of the BB6Copula (survival sur, 90 degree rotated r90 and 270 degree rotated r270) family for given parameters.

### Usage

```
BB6Copula(param = c(1, 1))
```

BB6Copula-class 9

### **Arguments**

param

The parameter param defines the copula through theta and delta.

#### Value

One of the respective BB6 copula classes (BB6Copula, surBB6Copula, r90BB6Copula, r270BB6Copula).

#### Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

#### References

Joe, H., (1997). Multivariate Models and Dependence Concepts. Monogra. Stat. Appl. Probab. 73, London: Chapman and Hall.

### See Also

See also BB6Copula, BB7Copula, BB8Copula and joeCopula for further wrapper functions to the VineCopula-package.

# **Examples**

```
library(copula)  \begin{aligned} & \text{persp}(BB6Copula(c(1,1.5)), \ dCopula, \ zlim = c(0,10))} \\ & \text{persp}(surBB6Copula(c(1,1.5)), \ dCopula, \ zlim = c(0,10))} \\ & \text{persp}(r90BB6Copula(c(-1,-1.5)), \ dCopula, \ zlim = c(0,10))} \\ & \text{persp}(r270BB6Copula(c(-1,-1.5)), \ dCopula, \ zlim = c(0,10))} \end{aligned}
```

```
BB6Copula-class Classes "BB6Copula", "surBB6Copula", "r90BB6Copula" and "r270BB6Copula"
```

# **Description**

Wrapper classes representing the BB6, survival BB6, 90 degree and 270 degree rotated BB6 copula families (Joe 1997) from the VineCopula-package.

# **Objects from the Classes**

```
Objects can be created by calls of the form new("BB6Copula", ...), new("surBB6Copula", ...), new("r90BB6Copula", ...) and new("r270BB6Copula", ...) or by the functions BB6Copula, surBB6Copula, r90BB6Copula and r270BB6Copula.
```

10 BB7Copula

### Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

#### References

Joe, H., (1997). Multivariate Models and Dependence Concepts. Monogra. Stat. Appl. Probab. 73, London: Chapman and Hall.

### See Also

See also BB1Copula, BB7Copula, BB8Copula and joeCopula for further wrapper classes to the VineCopula-package.

# **Examples**

```
showClass("BB6Copula")
```

BB7Copula

Constructor of the BB7 Family and Rotated Versions thereof

# **Description**

Constructs an object of the BB7Copula (survival sur, 90 degree rotated r90 and 270 degree rotated r270) family for given parameters.

#### Usage

```
BB7Copula(param = c(1, 1))
```

# **Arguments**

param

The parameter param defines the copula through theta and delta.

#### Value

One of the respective BB7 copula classes (BB7Copula, surBB7Copula, r90BB7Copula, r270BB7Copula).

# Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

#### References

Joe, H., (1997). Multivariate Models and Dependence Concepts. Monogra. Stat. Appl. Probab. 73, London: Chapman and Hall.

BB7Copula-class 11

### See Also

See also BB6Copula, BB7Copula, BB8Copula and joeCopula for further wrapper functions to the VineCopula-package.

### **Examples**

```
library(copula)

persp(BB7Copula(c(1,1.5)), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10))
persp(surBB7Copula(c(1,1.5)), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10))
persp(r90BB7Copula(c(-1,-1.5)), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10))
persp(r270BB7Copula(c(-1,-1.5)), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10))

BB7Copula-class

Classes "BB7Copula", "surBB7Copula", "r90BB7Copula" and
```

"r270BB7Copula"

# Description

Wrapper classes representing the BB7, survival BB7, 90 degree and 270 degree rotated BB7 copula families (Joe 1997) from the VineCopula-package package.

### **Objects from the Classes**

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("BB7Copula", ...), new("surBB7Copula", ...), new("r90BB7Copula", ...) and new("r270BB7Copula", ...) or by the functions BB7Copula, surBB7Copula, r90BB7Copula and r270BB7Copula.

### Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

### References

Joe, H., (1997). Multivariate Models and Dependence Concepts. Monogra. Stat. Appl. Probab. 73, London: Chapman and Hall.

#### See Also

See also BB1Copula, BB8Copula and joeCopula for further wrapper classes to the VineCopula-package.

```
showClass("BB7Copula")
```

12 BB8Copula

BB8Copula

Constructor of the BB8 Family and Rotated Versions thereof

# Description

Constructs an object of the BB8Copula (survival sur, 90 degree rotated r90 and 270 degree rotated r270) family for given parameters.

### Usage

```
BB8Copula(param = c(1, 1))
```

### **Arguments**

param

The parameter param defines the copula through theta and delta.

#### Value

One of the respective BB8 copula classes (BB8Copula, surBB8Copula, r90BB8Copula, r270BB8Copula).

#### Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

#### References

Joe, H., (1997). Multivariate Models and Dependence Concepts. Monogra. Stat. Appl. Probab. 73, London: Chapman and Hall.

#### See Also

See also BB6Copula, BB7Copula, BB8Copula and joeCopula for further wrapper functions to the VineCopula-package.

```
library(copula)  persp(BB8Copula(c(2,0.9)), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10)) \\ persp(surBB8Copula(c(2,0.9)), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10)) \\ persp(r90BB8Copula(c(-2,-0.9)), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10)) \\ persp(r270BB8Copula(c(-2,-0.9)), dCopula(c(-2,-0.9)) \\ persp(r270BB8Copula(c(-2,-0.9))) \\ persp(r270BB
```

BB8Copula-class 13

BB8Copula-class	Classes	"BB8Copula",	"surBB8Copula",	"r90BB8Copula"	and
	"r270BB	8Copula"			

# **Description**

Wrapper classes representing the BB8, survival BB8, 90 degree and 270 degree rotated BB8 copula families (Joe 1997) from the VineCopula-package package.

# **Objects from the Classes**

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("BB8Copula", ...), new("surBB8Copula", ...), new("r90BB8Copula", ...) and new("r270BB8Copula", ...) or by the functions BB8Copula, surBB8Copula, r90BB8Copula and r270BB8Copula.

# Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

### References

Joe, H., (1997). Multivariate Models and Dependence Concepts. Monogra. Stat. Appl. Probab. 73, London: Chapman and Hall.

# See Also

See also BB1Copula, BB6Copula, BB7Copula and joeCopula for further wrapper classes to the VineCopula-package.

# **Examples**

```
showClass("BB8Copula")
```

BetaMatrix

Matrix of Empirical Blomqvist's Beta Values

# **Description**

This function computes the empirical Blomqvist's beta.

### Usage

BetaMatrix(data)

14 BiCop

# **Arguments**

data

An N x d data matrix.

### Value

Matrix of the empirical Blomqvist's betas.

# Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier

# References

Blomqvist, N. (1950). On a measure of dependence between two random variables. The Annals of Mathematical Statistics, 21(4), 593-600.

Nelsen, R. (2006). An introduction to copulas. Springer

# See Also

TauMatrix, BiCopPar2Beta, RVinePar2Beta

### **Examples**

```
data(daxreturns)
data <- as.matrix(daxreturns)
# compute the empirical Blomqvist's betas
BetaMatrix(data)</pre>
```

BiCop

Constructing BiCop-objects

# **Description**

This function creates an object of class BiCop and checks for family/parameter consistency.

# Usage

```
BiCop(family, par, par2 = 0, tau = NULL, check.pars = TRUE)
```

BiCop 15

#### **Arguments**

family An integer defining the bivariate copula family: 0 = independence copula 1 = Gaussian copula 2 = Student t copula (t-copula) 3 = Clayton copula 4 = Gumbel copula 5 = Frank copula 6 =Joe copula 7 = BB1 copula8 = BB6 copula9 = BB7 copula10 = BB8 copula 13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton") 14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel") 16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe") 17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1") 18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6") 19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7") 20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8") 23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees) 24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees) 26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees) 27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees) 28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees) 29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees) 30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees) 33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees) 34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees) 36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees) 37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees) 38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees) 39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees) 40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees) 104 = Tawn type 1 copula114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees) 124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees) 134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees) 204 = Tawn type 2 copula214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees)

> 224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees) 234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)

par Copula parameter.

par2

Second parameter for bivariate copulas with two parameters (t, BB1, BB6, BB7, BB8, Tawn type 1 and type 2; default is par2 = 0). par2 should be an positive integer for the Students's t copula family = 2.

16 BiCop

tau numeric; value of Kendall's tau; has to lie in the interval (-1, 1). Can only be

used with one-parameter families and the t copula. If tau is provided, par will

be ignored.

check.pars logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are

omitted (should only be used with care).

#### Value

An object of class BiCop. It is a list containing information about the bivariate copula. Its components are:

family, par, par2

copula family number and parameter(s),

npars number of parameters, familyname name of the copula family,

tau Kendall's tau, beta Blomqvist's beta,

taildep lower and upper tail dependence coefficients,

call the call that created the object.

Objects of this class are also returned by the BiCopEst and BiCopSelect functions. In this case, further information about the fit is added.

#### Note

For a comprehensive summary of the model, use summary(object); to see all its contents, use str(object).

#### Author(s)

Thomas Nagler

### See Also

BiCopPDF, BiCopHfunc, BiCopSim, BiCopEst, BiCopSelect, plot.BiCop, contour.BiCop

```
## create BiCop object for bivariate t-copula
obj <- BiCop(family = 2, par = 0.4, par2 = 6)
obj

## see the object's content or a summary
str(obj)
summary(obj)

## a selection of functions that can be used with BiCop objects
simdata <- BiCopSim(300, obj) # simulate data</pre>
```

BiCopCDF 17

```
BiCopPDF(0.5, 0.5, obj) # evaluate density in (0.5,0.5) plot(obj) # surface plot of copula density contour(obj) # contour plot with standard normal margins print(obj) # brief overview of BiCop object summary(obj) # comprehensive overview of BiCop object
```

BiCopCDF

Distribution Function of a Bivariate Copula

# **Description**

This function evaluates the cumulative distribution function (CDF) of a given parametric bivariate copula.

### Usage

```
BiCopCDF(u1, u2, family, par, par2 = 0, obj = NULL,
  check.pars = TRUE)
```

### **Arguments**

u1, u2 numeric vectors of equal length with values in [0,1]. family integer; single number or vector of size length(u1); defines the bivariate copula family: 0 = independence copula 1 = Gaussian copula 2 = Student t copula (t-copula) 3 = Clayton copula 4 = Gumbel copula 5 = Frank copula 6 =Joe copula 7 = BB1 copula8 = BB6 copula9 = BB7 copula10 = BB8 copula13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton") 14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel") 16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe") 17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1") 18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6") 19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7") 20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8") 23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)

> 24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees) 26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees) 27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees)

18 BiCopCDF

```
28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees)
29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees)
30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees)
33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)
34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)
36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)
37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees)
38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees)
39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees)
40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)
104 = Tawn type 1 copula
114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees)
124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees)
134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees)
204 = \text{Tawn type } 2 \text{ copula}
214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees)
224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees)
234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)
```

par numeric; single number or vector of size length(u1); copula parameter.

par2 numeric; single number or vector of size length(u1); second parameter for

bivariate copulas with two parameters (BB1, BB6, BB7, BB8, Tawn type 1 and

type 2; default: par2 = 0).

obj BiCop object containing the family and parameter specification.

check.pars logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are

omitted (should only be used with care).

### **Details**

If the family and parameter specification is stored in a BiCop object obj, the alternative version

```
BiCopCDF(u1, u2, obj) can be used.
```

### Value

A numeric vector of the bivariate copula distribution function

- of the copula family
- with parameter(s) par, par2
- evaluated at u1 and u2.

### Note

The calculation of the cumulative distribution function (CDF) of the Student's t copula (family = 2) is only approximate. For numerical reasons, the degree of freedom parameter (par2) is rounded to an integer before calculation of the CDF.

BiCopCheck 19

### Author(s)

Eike Brechmann

#### See Also

```
BiCopPDF, BiCopHfunc, BiCopSim, BiCop
```

# **Examples**

```
## simulate from a bivariate Clayton copula
set.seed(123)
cop <- BiCop(family = 3, par = 3.4)
simdata <- BiCopSim(300, cop)

## evaluate the distribution function of the bivariate Clayton copula
u1 <- simdata[,1]
u2 <- simdata[,2]
BiCopCDF(u1, u2, cop)

## select a bivariate copula for the simulated data
cop <- BiCopSelect(u1, u2)
summary(cop)
## and evaluate its CDF
BiCopCDF(u1, u2, cop)</pre>
```

BiCopCheck

Check for family/parameter consistency in bivariate copula models

# **Description**

The function checks if a certain combination of copula family and parameters can be used within other functions of this package.

# Usage

```
BiCopCheck(family, par, par2 = 0, ...)
```

# **Arguments**

family

An integer defining the bivariate copula family:

0 = independence copula

1 = Gaussian copula

2 = Student t copula (t-copula)

3 = Clayton copula

4 = Gumbel copula

5 = Frank copula

6 =Joe copula

20 BiCopCheck

```
7 = BB1 copula
8 = BB6 copula
9 = BB7 copula
10 = BB8 copula
13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")
14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")
16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")
17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1")
18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6")
19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7")
20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8")
23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)
24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)
26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)
27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees)
28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees)
29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees)
30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees)
33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)
34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)
36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)
37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees)
38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees)
39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees)
40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)
104 = \text{Tawn type } 1 \text{ copula}
114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees)
124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees)
134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees)
204 = \text{Tawn type 2 copula}
214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees)
224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees)
234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)
```

## par Copula parameter.

par2 Second parameter for bivariate copulas with two parameters (t, BB1, BB6, BB7,

BB8, Tawn type 1 and type 2; default is par 2 = 0).

... used internally.

# Value

A logical indicating whether the family can be used with the parameter specification.

### Author(s)

Thomas Nagler

BiCopChiPlot 21

### **Examples**

```
## check parameter of Clayton copula
BiCopCheck(3, 1) # works
## Not run: BiCopCheck(3, -1) # does not work (only positive parameter is allowed)
```

BiCopChiPlot

Chi-plot for Bivariate Copula Data

# **Description**

This function creates a chi-plot of given bivariate copula data.

# Usage

```
BiCopChiPlot(u1, u2, PLOT = TRUE, mode = "NULL", ...)
```

# **Arguments**

u1, u2	Data vectors of equal length with values in [0,1].
PLOT	Logical; whether the results are plotted. If PLOT = FALSE, the values lambda, chi and control.bounds are returned (see below; default: PLOT = TRUE).
mode	Character; whether a general, lower or upper chi-plot is calculated. Possible values are mode = "NULL", "upper" and "lower".  "NULL" = general chi-plot (default)  "upper" = upper chi-plot  "lower" = lower chi-plot
	Additional plot arguments.

# **Details**

For observations  $u_{i,j}$ , i = 1, ..., N, j = 1, 2, the chi-plot is based on the following two quantities: the chi-statistics

$$\chi_i = \frac{\hat{F}_{1,2}(u_{i,1}, u_{i,2}) - \hat{F}_1(u_{i,1})\hat{F}_2(u_{i,2})}{\sqrt{\hat{F}_1(u_{i,1})(1 - \hat{F}_1(u_{i,1}))\hat{F}_2(u_{i,2})(1 - \hat{F}_2(u_{i,2}))}},$$

and the lambda-statistics

$$\lambda_i = 4sgn\left(\tilde{F}_1(u_{i,1}), \tilde{F}_2(u_{i,2})\right) \cdot \max\left(\tilde{F}_1(u_{i,1})^2, \tilde{F}_2(u_{i,2})^2\right),$$

where  $\hat{F}_1$ ,  $\hat{F}_2$  and  $\hat{F}_{1,2}$  are the empirical distribution functions of the uniform random variables  $U_1$  and  $U_2$  and of  $(U_1, U_2)$ , respectively. Further,  $\tilde{F}_1 = \hat{F}_1 - 0.5$  and  $\tilde{F}_2 = \hat{F}_2 - 0.5$ .

These quantities only depend on the ranks of the data and are scaled to the interval [0,1].  $\lambda_i$  measures a distance of a data point  $(u_{i,1},u_{i,2})$  to the center of the bivariate data set, while  $\chi_i$ 

22 BiCopChiPlot

corresponds to a correlation coefficient between dichotomized values of  $U_1$  and  $U_2$ . Under independence it holds that  $\chi_i \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \frac{1}{N})$  and  $\lambda_i \sim \mathcal{U}[-1, 1]$  asymptotically, i.e., values of  $\chi_i$  close to zero indicate independence—corresponding to  $F_{1,2} = F_1 F_2$ .

When plotting these quantities, the pairs of  $(\lambda_i, \chi_i)$  will tend to be located above zero for positively dependent margins and vice versa for negatively dependent margins. Control bounds around zero indicate whether there is significant dependence present.

If mode = "lower" or "upper", the above quantities are calculated only for those  $u_{i,1}$ 's and  $u_{i,2}$ 's which are smaller/larger than the respective means of u1=  $(u_{1,1},...,u_{N,1})$  and u2=  $(u_{1,2},...,u_{N,2})$ .

#### Value

lambda Lambda-statistics (x-axis). 
chi Chi-statistics (y-axis). 
control bounds A 2-dimensional vector of bounds  $((1.54/\sqrt{n}, -1.54/\sqrt{n}))$ , where n is the length of u1 and where the chosen values correspond to an approximate significance level of 10%.

#### Author(s)

Natalia Belgorodski, Ulf Schepsmeier

#### References

Abberger, K. (2004). A simple graphical method to explore tail-dependence in stock-return pairs. Discussion Paper, University of Konstanz, Germany.

Genest, C. and A. C. Favre (2007). Everything you always wanted to know about copula modeling but were afraid to ask. Journal of Hydrologic Engineering, 12 (4), 347-368.

#### See Also

BiCopMetaContour, BiCopKPlot, BiCopLambda

BiCopCompare 23

BiCopCompare

Shiny app for bivariate copula selection

# **Description**

The function starts a shiny app which visualizes copula data and allows to compare it with overlays of density contours or simulated data from different copula families with fitted parameters. Several specifications for the margins are available.

### Usage

```
BiCopCompare(u1, u2, familyset = NA, rotations = TRUE)
```

### **Arguments**

u1, u2

Data vectors of equal length with values in [0,1].

familyset

Vector of bivariate copula families to select from. The vector has to include at least one bivariate copula family that allows for positive and one that allows for negative dependence. If familyset = NA (default), selection among all possible families is performed. If a vector of negative numbers is provided, selection among all but abs(familyset) families is performed. Coding of bivariate copula families:

- 0 = independence copula
- 1 = Gaussian copula
- 2 = Student t copula (t-copula)
- 3 = Clayton copula
- 4 = Gumbel copula
- 5 = Frank copula
- 6 =Joe copula
- 7 = BB1 copula
- 8 = BB6 copula
- 9 = BB7 copula
- 10 = BB8 copula
- 13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")
- 14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")
- 16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")
- 17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1")
- 18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6")
- 19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7")
- 20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8")

24 BiCopCondSim

```
23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)
24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)
26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)
27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees)
28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees)
29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees)
30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees)
33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)
34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)
36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)
37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees)
38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees)
39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees)
40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)
104 = \text{Tawn type } 1 \text{ copula}
114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees)
124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees)
134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees)
204 = Tawn type 2 copula
214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees)
224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees)
234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)
```

rotations

If TRUE, all rotations of the families in familyset are included (or subtracted).

# Value

A BiCop object containing the model selected by the user.

### Author(s)

Matthias Killiches, Thomas Nagler

### **Examples**

```
# load data
data(daxreturns)
# find a suitable copula family for the first two stocks
## Not run: fit <- BiCopCompare(daxreturns[, 1], daxreturns[, 2])</pre>
```

BiCopCondSim

Conditional simulation from a Bivariate Copula

BiCopCondSim 25

# **Description**

This function simulates from a parametric bivariate copula, where on of the variables is fixed. I.e., we simulate either from  $C_{2|1}(u_2|u_1;\theta)$  or  $C_{1|2}(u_1|u_2;\theta)$ , which are both conditional distribution functions of one variable given another.

### Usage

```
BiCopCondSim(N, cond.val, cond.var, family, par, par2 = 0, obj = NULL,
    check.pars = TRUE)
```

### **Arguments**

Ν Number of observations simulated. cond.val numeric vector of length N containing the values to condition on. cond.var either 1 or 2; the variable to condition on. family integer; single number or vector of size N; defines the bivariate copula family: 0 = independence copula 1 = Gaussian copula 2 = Student t copula (t-copula) 3 = Clayton copula 4 = Gumbel copula 5 = Frank copula 6 = Joe copula7 = BB1 copula8 = BB6 copula9 = BB7 copula10 = BB8 copula13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton") 14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel") 16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe") 17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1") 18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6") 19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7") 20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8") 23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees) 24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees) 26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees) 27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees) 28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees) 29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees) 30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees) 33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees) 34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees) 36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees) 37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees) 38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees)

39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees)

26 BiCopCondSim

```
40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)
104 = \text{Tawn type } 1 \text{ copula}
114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees)
124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees)
134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees)
204 = \text{Tawn type 2 copula}
214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees)
224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees)
234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)
numeric; single number or vector of size N; copula parameter.
numeric; single number or vector of size N; second parameter for bivariate cop-
```

par

par2 ulas with two parameters (t, BB1, BB6, BB7, BB8, Tawn type 1 and type 2;

default: par2 = 0). par2 should be a positive integer for the Students's t copula

family = 2.

obj BiCop object containing the family and parameter specification.

logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are check.pars

omitted (should only be used with care).

#### **Details**

If the family and parameter specification is stored in a BiCop object obj, the alternative version

```
BiCopCondSim(N, cond.val, cond.var, obj)
can be used.
```

## Value

A length N vector of simulated from conditional distributions related to bivariate copula with family and parameter(s) par, par2.

### Author(s)

Thomas Nagler

# See Also

```
BiCopCDF, BiCopPDF, RVineSim
```

```
# create bivariate t-copula
obj \leftarrow BiCop(family = 2, par = -0.7, par2 = 4)
# simulate 500 observations of (U1, U2)
sim <- BiCopSim(500, obj)</pre>
hist(sim[, 1]) # data have uniform distribution
hist(sim[, 2]) # data have uniform distribution
```

BiCopDeriv 27

```
# simulate 500 observations of (U2 | U1 = 0.7)
sim1 <- BiCopCondSim(500, cond.val = 0.7, cond.var = 1, obj)
hist(sim1) # not uniform!

# simulate 500 observations of (U1 | U2 = 0.1)
sim2 <- BiCopCondSim(500, cond.val = 0.1, cond.var = 2, obj)
hist(sim2) # not uniform!</pre>
```

BiCopDeriv

Derivatives of a Bivariate Copula Density

### **Description**

This function evaluates the derivative of a given parametric bivariate copula density with respect to its parameter(s) or one of its arguments.

### Usage

```
BiCopDeriv(u1, u2, family, par, par2 = 0, deriv = "par", log = FALSE,
  obj = NULL, check.pars = TRUE)
```

#### Arguments

```
numeric vectors of equal length with values in [0,1].
u1, u2
family
                  integer; single number or vector of size length(u1); defines the bivariate cop-
                  ula family:
                  0 = independence copula
                   1 = Gaussian copula
                   2 = Student t copula (t-copula)
                   3 = Clayton copula
                   4 = Gumbel copula
                  5 = Frank copula
                   6 = Joe copula
                   13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")
                   14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")
                   16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")
                   23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)
                   24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)
                   26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)
                   33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)
                   34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)
                   36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)
```

par numeric; single number or vector of size length(u1); copula parameter.

28 BiCopDeriv

par2	integer; single number or vector of size length(u1); second parameter for the t-Copula; default is par2 = 0, should be an positive integer for the Students's t copula family = 2.
deriv	Derivative argument "par" = derivative with respect to the first parameter (default) "par2" = derivative with respect to the second parameter (only available for the t-copula) "u1" = derivative with respect to the first argument u1 "u2" = derivative with respect to the second argument u2
log	Logical; if TRUE than the derivative of the log-likelihood is returned (default: log = FALSE; only available for the derivatives with respect to the parameter(s) (deriv = "par" or deriv = "par2")).
obj	BiCop object containing the family and parameter specification.
check.pars	logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are omitted (should only be used with care).

# **Details**

If the family and parameter specification is stored in a BiCop object obj, the alternative version

```
BiCopDeriv(u1, u2, obj, deriv = "par", log = FALSE)
can be used.
```

### Value

A numeric vector of the bivariate copula derivative

- of the copula family
- with parameter(s) par, par2
- with respect to deriv,
- evaluated at u1 and u2.

# Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier

### References

```
Schepsmeier, U. and J. Stoeber (2014). Derivatives and Fisher information of bivariate copulas. Statistical Papers, 55 (2), 525-542. 
http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s00362-013-0498-x.
```

#### See Also

 ${\bf RVine Grad, RVine Hessian, Bi Cop Deriv 2, Bi Cop H func Deriv, Bi Cop}$ 

BiCopDeriv2 29

### **Examples**

```
## simulate from a bivariate Student-t copula
set.seed(123)
cop <- BiCop(family = 2, par = -0.7, par2 = 4)
simdata <- BiCopSim(100, cop)

## derivative of the bivariate t-copula with respect to the first parameter
u1 <- simdata[,1]
u2 <- simdata[,2]
BiCopDeriv(u1, u2, cop, deriv = "par")

## estimate a Student-t copula for the simulated data
cop <- BiCopEst(u1, u2, family = 2)
## and evaluate its derivative w.r.t. the second argument u2
BiCopDeriv(u1, u2, cop, deriv = "u2")</pre>
```

BiCopDeriv2

Second Derivatives of a Bivariate Copula Density

# **Description**

This function evaluates the second derivative of a given parametric bivariate copula density with respect to its parameter(s) and/or its arguments.

#### **Usage**

```
BiCopDeriv2(u1, u2, family, par, par2 = 0, deriv = "par", obj = NULL,
    check.pars = TRUE)
```

# **Arguments**

u1, u2 numeric vectors of equal length with values in [0,1]. integer; single number or vector of size length(u1); defines the bivariate copfamily ula family: 0 = independence copula 1 = Gaussian copula 2 = Student t copula (t-copula) 3 = Clayton copula 4 = Gumbel copula 5 = Frank copula 6 =Joe copula 13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton") 14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel") 16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe") 23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees) 24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)

30 BiCopDeriv2

26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees) 33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees) 34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees) 36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)

par Copula parameter.

par2 integer; single number or vector of size length(u1); second parameter for the

t-Copula; default is par2 = 0, should be an positive integer for the Students's t

copula family = 2.

deriv Derivative argument

"par" = second derivative with respect to the first parameter (default)

"par2" = second derivative with respect to the second parameter (only available for the t-copula)

"u1" = second derivative with respect to the first argument u1

"u2" = second derivative with respect to the second argument u2

"par1par2" = second derivative with respect to the first and second parameter (only available for the t-copula)

"par1u1" = second derivative with respect to the first parameter and the first argument

"par2u1" = second derivative with respect to the second parameter and the first argument (only available for the t-copula)

"par1u2" = second derivative with respect to the first parameter and the second argument

"par2u2" = second derivative with respect to the second parameter and the second argument (only available for the t-copula)

obj BiCop object containing the family and parameter specification.

check.pars logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are

omitted (should only be used with care).

#### **Details**

If the family and parameter specification is stored in a BiCop object obj, the alternative version

```
BiCopDeriv2(u1, u2, obj, deriv = "par")
can be used.
```

#### Value

A numeric vector of the second-order bivariate copula derivative

- of the copula family
- with parameter(s) par, par2
- with respect to deriv
- evaluated at u1 and u2.

### Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier, Jakob Stoeber

### References

Schepsmeier, U. and J. Stoeber (2014). Derivatives and Fisher information of bivariate copulas. Statistical Papers, 55 (2), 525-542.

```
http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s00362-013-0498-x.
```

### See Also

```
RVineGrad, RVineHessian, BiCopDeriv, BiCopHfuncDeriv, BiCop
```

# **Examples**

```
## simulate from a bivariate Student-t copula
set.seed(123)
cop <- BiCop(family = 2, par = -0.7, par2 = 4)
simdata <- BiCopSim(100, cop)

## second derivative of the Student-t copula w.r.t. the first parameter
u1 <- simdata[,1]
u2 <- simdata[,2]
BiCopDeriv2(u1, u2, cop, deriv = "par")

## estimate a Student-t copula for the simulated data
cop <- BiCopEst(u1, u2, family = 2)
## and evaluate its second derivative w.r.t. the second argument u2
BiCopDeriv2(u1, u2, cop, deriv = "u2")</pre>
```

BiCopEst

Parameter Estimation for Bivariate Copula Data

### **Description**

This function estimates the parameter(s) of a bivariate copula using either inversion of empirical Kendall's tau (for one parameter copula families only) or maximum likelihood estimation for implemented copula families.

# Usage

```
BiCopEst(u1, u2, family, method = "mle", se = FALSE, max.df = 30, max.BB = list(BB1 = c(5, 6), BB6 = c(6, 6), BB7 = c(5, 6), BB8 = c(6, 1)), weights = NA)
```

### **Arguments**

u1, u2 Data vectors of equal length with values in [0,1]. family An integer defining the bivariate copula family: 0 = independence copula 1 = Gaussian copula 2 = Student t copula (t-copula) 3 = Clayton copula 4 = Gumbel copula 5 = Frank copula 6 = Joe copula7 = BB1 copula 8 = BB6 copula9 = BB7 copula10 = BB8 copula13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton") 14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel") 16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe") 17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1") 18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6") 19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7") 20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8") 23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees) 24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees) 26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees) 27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees) 28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees) 29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees) 30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees) 33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees) 34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees) 36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees) 37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees) 38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees) 39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees) 40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees) 104 = Tawn type 1 copula114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees) 124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees) 134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees) 204 = Tawn type 2 copula214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees) 224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees) 234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees) method indicates the estimation method: either maximum likelihood estimation (method = "mle"; default) or inversion of Kendall's tau (method = "itau"). For method = "itau" only one parameter families and the Student t copula can be used (family =

	1,2,3,4,5,6,13,14,16,23,24,26,33,34 or 36). For the t-copula, par2 is found by a crude profile likelihood optimization over the interval (2, 10].
se	Logical; whether standard error(s) of parameter estimates is/are estimated (default: se = FALSE).
max.df	Numeric; upper bound for the estimation of the degrees of freedom parameter of the t-copula (default: $max.df = 30$ ).
max.BB	List; upper bounds for the estimation of the two parameters (in absolute values) of the BB1, BB6, BB7 and BB8 copulas (default: $max.BB = list(BB1=c(5,6),BB6=c(6,6),BB7=c(5,6),BB8=c(6,1))$ ).
weights	Numerical; weights for each observation (optional).

### **Details**

If method = "itau", the function computes the empirical Kendall's tau of the given copula data and exploits the one-to-one relationship of copula parameter and Kendall's tau which is available for many one parameter bivariate copula families (see BiCopPar2Tau and BiCopTau2Par). The inversion of Kendall's tau is however not available for all bivariate copula families (see above). If a two parameter copula family is chosen and method = "itau", a warning message is returned and the MLE is calculated.

For method = "mle" copula parameters are estimated by maximum likelihood using starting values obtained by method = "itau". If no starting values are available by inversion of Kendall's tau, starting values have to be provided given expert knowledge and the boundaries max.df and max.BB respectively. Note: The MLE is performed via numerical maximization using the L\_BFGS-B method. For the Gaussian, the t- and the one-parametric Archimedean copulas we can use the gradients, but for the BB copulas we have to use finite differences for the L\_BFGS-B method.

A warning message is returned if the estimate of the degrees of freedom parameter of the t-copula is larger than max.df. For high degrees of freedom the t-copula is almost indistinguishable from the Gaussian and it is advised to use the Gaussian copula in this case. As a rule of thumb max.df = 30 typically is a good choice. Moreover, standard errors of the degrees of freedom parameter estimate cannot be estimated in this case.

#### Value

An object of class BiCop, augmented with the following entries:

se, se2	standard errors for the parameter estimates (if se = TRUE,				
nobs	number of observations,				
logLik	log likelihood				
AIC	Aikaike's Informaton Criterion,				
BIC	Bayesian's Informaton Criterion,				
emptau	empirical value of Kendall's tau,				
p.value.indeptest					

p-value of the independence test.

#### Note

For a comprehensive summary of the fitted model, use summary(object); to see all its contents, use str(object).

### Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier, Eike Brechmann, Jakob Stoeber, Carlos Almeida

#### References

Joe, H. (1997). Multivariate Models and Dependence Concepts. Chapman and Hall, London.

### See Also

BiCop, BiCopPar2Tau, BiCopTau2Par, RVineSegEst, BiCopSelect,

```
## Example 1: bivariate Gaussian copula
dat <- BiCopSim(500, 1, 0.7)</pre>
u1 <- dat[, 1]
v1 <- dat[, 2]
# estimate parameters of Gaussian copula by inversion of Kendall's tau
est1.tau <- BiCopEst(u1, v1, family = 1, method = "itau")
est1.tau # short overview
summary(est1.tau) # comprehensive overview
str(est1.tau) # see all contents of the object
# check if parameter actually coincides with inversion of Kendall's tau
tau1 <- cor(u1, v1, method = "kendall")</pre>
all.equal(BiCopTau2Par(1, tau1), est1.tau$par)
# maximum likelihood estimate for comparison
est1.mle <- BiCopEst(u1, v1, family = 1, method = "mle")</pre>
summary(est1.mle)
## Example 2: bivariate Clayton and survival Gumbel copulas
# simulate from a Clayton copula
dat <- BiCopSim(500, 3, 2.5)</pre>
u2 <- dat[, 1]
v2 <- dat[, 2]
# empirical Kendall's tau
tau2 <- cor(u2, v2, method = "kendall")
# inversion of empirical Kendall's tau for the Clayton copula
BiCopTau2Par(3, tau2)
BiCopEst(u2, v2, family = 3, method = "itau")
```

BiCopEstList 35

```
# inversion of empirical Kendall's tau for the survival Gumbel copula
BiCopTau2Par(14, tau2)
BiCopEst(u2, v2, family = 14, method = "itau")

# maximum likelihood estimates for comparison
BiCopEst(u2, v2, family = 3, method = "mle")
BiCopEst(u2, v2, family = 14, method = "mle")
```

BiCopEstList

List of Maximum Likelihood Estimates for Several Bivariate Copula Families

#### **Description**

This function allows to compare bivariate copula models across a number of families w.r.t. the fit statistics log-likelihood, AIC, and BIC. For each family, the parameters are estimated by maximum likelihood.

### Usage

```
BiCopEstList(u1, u2, familyset = NA, weights = NA, rotations = TRUE,
...)
```

### **Arguments**

u1, u2

Data vectors of equal length with values in [0,1].

familyset

Vector of bivariate copula families to select from. The vector has to include at least one bivariate copula family that allows for positive and one that allows for negative dependence. If familyset = NA (default), selection among all possible families is performed. Coding of bivariate copula families:

0 = independence copula

1 = Gaussian copula

2 = Student t copula (t-copula)

3 = Clayton copula

4 = Gumbel copula

5 = Frank copula

6 =Joe copula

7 = BB1 copula

8 = BB6 copula

9 = BB7 copula

10 = BB8 copula

13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")

14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")

16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")

17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1")

18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6")

```
19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7")
20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8")
23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)
24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)
26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)
27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees)
28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees)
29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees)
30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees)
33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)
34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)
36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)
37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees)
38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees)
39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees)
40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)
104 = \text{Tawn type } 1 \text{ copula}
114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees)
124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees)
134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees)
204 = \text{Tawn type 2 copula}
214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees)
224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees)
234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)
```

weights Numerical; weights for each observation (optional).

rotations If TRUE, all rotations of the families in familyset are included.

... further arguments passed to BiCopEst.

#### **Details**

First all available copulas are fitted using maximum likelihood estimation. Then the criteria are computed for all available copula families (e.g., if u1 and u2 are negatively dependent, Clayton, Gumbel, Joe, BB1, BB6, BB7 and BB8 and their survival copulas are not considered) and the family with the minimum value is chosen. For observations  $u_{i,j}$ , i = 1, ..., N, j = 1, 2, the AIC of a bivariate copula family c with parameter(s)  $\theta$  is defined as

$$AIC := -2\sum_{i=1}^{N} \ln[c(u_{i,1}, u_{i,2}|\boldsymbol{\theta})] + 2k,$$

where k=1 for one parameter copulas and k=2 for the two parameter t-, BB1, BB6, BB7 and BB8 copulas. Similarly, the BIC is given by

$$BIC := -2\sum_{i=1}^{N} \ln[c(u_{i,1}, u_{i,2}|\boldsymbol{\theta})] + \ln(N)k.$$

Evidently, if the BIC is chosen, the penalty for two parameter families is stronger than when using the AIC.

BiCopGofTest 37

# Value

A list containing

models a list of BiCop objects corresponding to the 'familyset" (only families corre-

sponding to the sign of the empirical Kendall's tau are used),

summary a data frame containing the log-likelihoods, AICs, and BICs of all the fitted

models.

# Author(s)

Thomas Nagler

#### References

Akaike, H. (1973). Information theory and an extension of the maximum likelihood principle. In B. N. Petrov and F. Csaki (Eds.), Proceedings of the Second International Symposium on Information Theory Budapest, Akademiai Kiado, pp. 267-281.

Schwarz, G. E. (1978). Estimating the dimension of a model. Annals of Statistics 6 (2), 461-464.

## See Also

```
BiCop, BiCopEst
```

# **Examples**

```
## compare models
data(daxreturns)
comp <- BiCopEstList(daxreturns[, 1], daxreturns[, 4])</pre>
```

BiCopGofTest

Goodness-of-Fit Test for Bivariate Copulas

# **Description**

This function performs a goodness-of-fit test for bivariate copulas, either based on White's information matrix equality (White, 1982) as introduced by Huang and Prokhorov (2011) or based on Kendall's process (Wang and Wells, 2000; Genest et al., 2006). It computes the test statistics and p-values.

# Usage

```
BiCopGofTest(u1, u2, family, par = 0, par2 = 0, method = "white",
  max.df = 30, B = 100, obj = NULL)
```

38 BiCopGofTest

### **Arguments**

```
Numeric vectors of equal length with values in [0,1].
u1, u2
family
                  An integer defining the bivariate copula family:
                  0 = independence copula
                  1 = Gaussian copula
                  2 = Student t copula (t-copula) (only for method = "white"; see details)
                  3 = Clayton copula
                  4 = Gumbel copula
                  5 = Frank copula
                  6 = Joe copula
                  7 = BB1 copula (only for method = "kendall")
                  8 = BB6 copula (only for method = "kendall")
                  9 = BB7 copula (only for method = "kendall")
                  10 = BB8 copula (only for method ="kendall")
                  13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")
                  14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")
                  16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")
                  17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1"; only for method = "kendall")
                  18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6"; only for method = "kendal1")
                  19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7"; only for method = "kendall")
                  20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8"; only for method = "kendal1")
                  23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)
                  24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)
                  26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)
                  27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees; only for method = "kendall")
                  28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees; only for method = "kendall")
                  29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees; only for method = "kendall")
                  30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees; only for method = "kendall")
                  33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)
                  34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)
                  36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)
                  37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees; only for method = "kendall")
                  38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees; only for method = "kendall")
                  39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees; only for method = "kendall")
                  40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees; only for method = "kendall")
                  Copula parameter (optional).
par
                  Second parameter for bivariate t-copula (optional); default: par2 = 0.
par2
method
                  A string indicating the goodness-of-fit method:
                  "white" = goodness-of-fit test based on White's information matrix equality
                  (default)
                  "kendall" = goodness-of-fit test based on Kendall's process
max.df
                  Numeric; upper bound for the estimation of the degrees of freedom parameter
                  of the t-copula (default: max.df = 30).
В
                  Integer; number of bootstrap samples (default: B = 100). For B = 0 only the
                  the test statistics are returned.
                  WARNING: If B is chosen too large, computations will take very long.
```

BiCopGofTest 39

obj BiCop object containing the family and parameter specification.

### **Details**

method = "white":

This goodness-of fit test uses the information matrix equality of White (1982) and was investigated by Huang and Prokhorov (2011). The main contribution is that under correct model specification the Fisher Information can be equivalently calculated as minus the expected Hessian matrix or as the expected outer product of the score function. The null hypothesis is

$$H_0: \boldsymbol{H}(\theta) + \boldsymbol{C}(\theta) = 0$$

against the alternative

$$H_0: \boldsymbol{H}(\theta) + \boldsymbol{C}(\theta) \neq 0,$$

where  $H(\theta)$  is the expected Hessian matrix and  $C(\theta)$  is the expected outer product of the score function. For the calculation of the test statistic we use the consistent maximum likelihood estimator  $\hat{\theta}$  and the sample counter parts of  $H(\theta)$  and  $C(\theta)$ . The correction of the covariance-matrix in the test statistic for the uncertainty in the margins is skipped. The implemented tests assumes that where is no uncertainty in the margins. The correction can be found in Huang and Prokhorov (2011). It involves two-dimensional integrals.

WARNING: For the t-copula the test may be unstable. The results for the t-copula therefore have to be treated carefully.

```
method = "kendall":
```

This copula goodness-of-fit test is based on Kendall's process as proposed by Wang and Wells (2000). For computation of p-values, the parametric bootstrap described by Genest et al. (2006) is used. For rotated copulas the input arguments are transformed and the goodness-of-fit procedure for the corresponding non-rotated copula is used.

#### Value

For method = "white":

p.value Asymptotic p-value.

statistic The observed test statistic.

For method ="kendall"

p.value.CvM Bootstrapped p-value of the goodness-of-fit test using the Cramer-von Mises

statistic (if  $B > \emptyset$ ).

p.value.KS Bootstrapped p-value of the goodness-of-fit test using the Kolmogorov-Smirnov

statistic (if  $B > \emptyset$ ).

statistic.CvM The observed Cramer-von Mises test statistic.

statistic.KS The observed Kolmogorov-Smirnov test statistic.

#### Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier, Wanling Huang, Jiying Luo, Eike Brechmann

40 BiCopHfunc

# References

Huang, W. and A. Prokhorov (2014). A goodness-of-fit test for copulas. Econometric Reviews, 33 (7), 751-771.

Wang, W. and M. T. Wells (2000). Model selection and semiparametric inference for bivariate failure-time data. Journal of the American Statistical Association, 95 (449), 62-72.

Genest, C., Quessy, J. F., and Remillard, B. (2006). Goodness-of-fit Procedures for Copula Models Based on the Probability Integral Transformation. Scandinavian Journal of Statistics, 33(2), 337-366. Luo J. (2011). Stepwise estimation of D-vines with arbitrary specified copula pairs and EDA tools. Diploma thesis, Technische Universitaet Muenchen.

http://mediatum.ub.tum.de/?id=1079291.

White, H. (1982) Maximum likelihood estimation of misspecified models, Econometrica, 50, 1-26.

#### See Also

```
BiCopDeriv2, BiCopDeriv, BiCopIndTest, BiCopVuongClarke
```

# **Examples**

```
# simulate from a bivariate Clayton copula
simdata <- BiCopSim(100, 3, 2)
u1 <- simdata[,1]
u2 <- simdata[,2]

# perform White's goodness-of-fit test for the true copula
BiCopGofTest(u1, u2, family = 3)

# perform White's goodness-of-fit test for the Frank copula
BiCopGofTest(u1, u2, family = 5)

# perform Kendall's goodness-of-fit test for the true copula
BiCopGofTest(u1, u2, family = 3, method = "kendall", B=50)

# perform Kendall's goodness-of-fit test for the Frank copula
BiCopGofTest(u1, u2, family = 5, method = "kendall", B=50)</pre>
```

BiCopHfunc

Conditional Distribution Function of a Bivariate Copula

# **Description**

Evaluate the conditional distribution function (h-function) of a given parametric bivariate copula.

BiCopHfunc 41

# Usage

```
BiCopHfunc(u1, u2, family, par, par2 = 0, obj = NULL,
  check.pars = TRUE)

BiCopHfunc1(u1, u2, family, par, par2 = 0, obj = NULL,
  check.pars = TRUE)

BiCopHfunc2(u1, u2, family, par, par2 = 0, obj = NULL,
  check.pars = TRUE)
```

# **Arguments**

u1, u2 numeric vectors of equal length with values in [0,1].

family integer; single number or vector of size length(u1); defines the bivariate copula family:

0 = independence copula

1 = Gaussian copula

2 = Student t copula (t-copula)

3 = Clayton copula

4 = Gumbel copula

5 = Frank copula

6 =Joe copula

7 = BB1 copula

8 = BB6 copula

9 = BB7 copula

10 = BB8 copula

13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")

14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")

16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")

17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1")

18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6")

19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7")

20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8")

23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)

24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)

26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)

27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees)

28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees)

29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees)

30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees)

33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)

34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)

36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)

37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees)

38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees)

39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees)

40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)

104 = Tawn type 1 copula

42 BiCopHfunc

114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees) 124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees) 134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees) 204 = Tawn type 2 copula 214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees) 224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees) 234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)

par numeric; single number or vector of size length(u1); copula parameter.

par2 numeric; single number or vector of size length(u1); second parameter for

bivariate copulas with two parameters (t, BB1, BB6, BB7, BB8, Tawn type 1 and type 2; default: par2 = 0). par2 should be an positive integer for the

Students's t copula family = 2.

obj BiCop object containing the family and parameter specification.

check.pars logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are

omitted (should only be used with care).

#### **Details**

The h-function is defined as the conditional distribution function of a bivariate copula, i.e.,

$$h_1(u_2|u_1; \boldsymbol{\theta}) := P(U_2 \le u_2|U_1 = u_1) = \frac{\partial C(u_1, u_2; \boldsymbol{\theta})}{\partial u_1},$$

$$h_2(u_1|u_2; \theta) := P(U_1 \le u_1|U_2 = u_2) = \frac{\partial C(u_1, u_2; \theta)}{\partial u_2},$$

where  $(U_1, U_2) \sim C$ , and C is a bivariate copula distribution function with parameter(s)  $\theta$ . For more details see Aas et al. (2009).

If the family and parameter specification is stored in a BiCop object obj, the alternative versions

BiCopHfunc(u1, u2, obj) BiCopHfunc1(u1, u2, obj) BiCopHfunc2(u1, u2, obj)

can be used.

# Value

BiCopHfunc returns a list with

hfunc1 Numeric vector of the conditional distribution function (h-function) of the cop-

ula family with parameter(s) par, par2 evaluated at u2 given u1, i.e.,  $h_1(u_2|u_1;\theta)$ .

hfunc2 Numeric vector of the conditional distribution function (h-function) of the cop-

ula family with parameter(s) par, par2 evaluated at u1 given u2, i.e.,  $h_2(u_1|u_2; \theta)$ .

BiCopHfunc1 is a faster version that only calculates hfunc1; BiCopHfunc2 only calculates hfunc2.

BiCopHfuncDeriv 43

# Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier

#### References

Aas, K., C. Czado, A. Frigessi, and H. Bakken (2009). Pair-copula constructions of multiple dependence. Insurance: Mathematics and Economics 44 (2), 182-198.

#### See Also

```
BiCopHinv, BiCopPDF, BiCopCDF, RVineLogLik, RVineSeqEst, BiCop
```

# **Examples**

```
data(daxreturns)

# h-functions of the Gaussian copula
cop <- BiCop(family = 1, par = 0.5)
h <- BiCopHfunc(daxreturns[, 2], daxreturns[, 1], cop)

# or using the fast versions
h1 <- BiCopHfunc1(daxreturns[, 2], daxreturns[, 1], cop)
h2 <- BiCopHfunc2(daxreturns[, 2], daxreturns[, 1], cop)
all.equal(h$hfunc1, h1)
all.equal(h$hfunc2, h2)</pre>
```

BiCopHfuncDeriv

Derivatives of the h-Function of a Bivariate Copula

# **Description**

This function evaluates the derivative of a given conditional parametric bivariate copula (h-function) with respect to its parameter(s) or one of its arguments.

# Usage

```
BiCopHfuncDeriv(u1, u2, family, par, par2 = 0, deriv = "par",
  obj = NULL, check.pars = TRUE)
```

# **Arguments**

```
u1, u2 numeric vectors of equal length with values in [0,1].

family integer; single number or vector of size length(u1); defines the bivariate copula family: \
0 = independence copula
1 = Gaussian copula
2 = Student t copula (t-copula)
```

44 BiCopHfuncDeriv

```
3 = Clayton copula
4 = Gumbel copula
5 = Frank copula
6 = Joe copula
13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")
14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")
16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")
23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)
24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)
26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)
33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)
34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)
36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)
numeric; single number or vector of size length(u1); copula parameter.
integer; single number or vector of size length(u1); second parameter for the
t-Copula; default is par2 = 0, should be an positive integer for the Students's t
copula family = 2.
Derivative argument
"par" = derivative with respect to the first parameter (default)
```

obj BiCop object containing the family and parameter specification.

check.pars logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are

"u2" = derivative with respect to the second argument u2

"par2" = derivative with respect to the second parameter (only available for the

omitted (should only be used with care).

# Details

par

par2

deriv

If the family and parameter specification is stored in a BiCop object obj, the alternative version

```
BiCopHfuncDeriv(u1, u2, obj, deriv = "par")
can be used.
```

# Value

A numeric vector of the conditional bivariate copula derivative

- of the copula family,
- with parameter(s) par, par2,
- with respect to deriv,
- evaluated at u1 and u2.

BiCopHfuncDeriv2 45

# Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier

# References

Schepsmeier, U. and J. Stoeber (2014). Derivatives and Fisher information of bivariate copulas. Statistical Papers, 55 (2), 525-542.

```
http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s00362-013-0498-x.
```

#### See Also

```
RVineGrad, RVineHessian, BiCopDeriv2, BiCopDeriv2, BiCopHfuncDeriv, BiCop
```

# **Examples**

```
## simulate from a bivariate Student-t copula
set.seed(123)
cop <- BiCop(family = 2, par = -0.7, par2 = 4)
simdata <- BiCopSim(100, cop)

## derivative of the conditional Student-t copula
## with respect to the first parameter
u1 <- simdata[,1]
u2 <- simdata[,2]
BiCopHfuncDeriv(u1, u2, cop, deriv = "par")

## estimate a Student-t copula for the simulated data
cop <- BiCopEst(u1, u2, family = 2)
## and evaluate the derivative of the conditional copula
## w.r.t. the second argument u2
BiCopHfuncDeriv(u1, u2, cop, deriv = "u2")</pre>
```

BiCopHfuncDeriv2

Second Derivatives of the h-Function of a Bivariate Copula

# Description

This function evaluates the second derivative of a given conditional parametric bivariate copula (h-function) with respect to its parameter(s) and/or its arguments.

# Usage

```
BiCopHfuncDeriv2(u1, u2, family, par, par2 = 0, deriv = "par",
  obj = NULL, check.pars = TRUE)
```

46 BiCopHfuncDeriv2

#### **Arguments**

u1, u2 numeric vectors of equal length with values in [0,1].

family integer; single number or vector of size length(u1); defines the bivariate cop-

ula family:

0 = independence copula

1 = Gaussian copula

2 = Student t copula (t-copula)

3 = Clayton copula

4 = Gumbel copula

5 = Frank copula

6 =Joe copula

13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")

14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")

16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")

23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)

24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)

26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)

33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)

34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)

36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)

par numeric; single number or vector of size length(u1); copula parameter.

par2 integer; single number or vector of size length(u1); second parameter for the

t-Copula; default is par2 = 0, should be an positive integer for the Students's t

copula family = 2.

deriv Derivative argument

argument

"par" = second derivative with respect to the first parameter (default)

"par2" = second derivative with respect to the second parameter (only available for the t-copula)

"u2" = second derivative with respect to the second argument u2

"par1par2" = second derivative with respect to the first and second parameter (only available for the t-copula)

"par1u2" = second derivative with respect to the first parameter and the second

"par2u2" = second derivative with respect to the second parameter and the second argument (only available for the t-copula)

obj BiCop object containing the family and parameter specification.

check.pars logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are

omitted (should only be used with care).

# **Details**

If the family and parameter specification is stored in a BiCop object obj, the alternative version

```
BiCopHfuncDeriv2(u1, u2, obj, deriv = "par")
```

BiCopHfuncDeriv2 47

can be used.

#### Value

A numeric vector of the second-order conditional bivariate copula derivative

- of the copula family
- with parameter(s) par, par2
- with respect to deriv
- evaluated at u1 and u2.

# Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier, Jakob Stoeber

#### References

```
Schepsmeier, U. and J. Stoeber (2014). Derivatives and Fisher information of bivariate copulas. Statistical Papers, 55 (2), 525-542. 
http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s00362-013-0498-x.
```

### See Also

RVineGrad, RVineHessian, BiCopDeriv, BiCopDeriv2, BiCopHfuncDeriv, BiCop

# **Examples**

```
## simulate from a bivariate Student-t copula
set.seed(123)
cop <- BiCop(family = 2, par = -0.7, par2 = 4)
simdata <- BiCopSim(100, cop)

## second derivative of the conditional bivariate t-copula
## with respect to the first parameter
u1 <- simdata[,1]
u2 <- simdata[,2]
BiCopHfuncDeriv2(u1, u2, cop, deriv = "par")

## estimate a Student-t copula for the simulated data
cop <- BiCopEst(u1, u2, family = 2)
## and evaluate the derivative of the conditional copula
## w.r.t. the second argument u2
BiCopHfuncDeriv2(u1, u2, cop, deriv = "u2")</pre>
```

48 BiCopHinv

BiCopHinv

Inverse Conditional Distribution Function of a Bivariate Copula

# **Description**

Evaluate the inverse conditional distribution function (inverse h-function) of a given parametric bivariate copula.

# Usage

```
BiCopHinv(u1, u2, family, par, par2 = 0, obj = NULL,
    check.pars = TRUE)

BiCopHinv1(u1, u2, family, par, par2 = 0, obj = NULL,
    check.pars = TRUE)

BiCopHinv2(u1, u2, family, par, par2 = 0, obj = NULL,
    check.pars = TRUE)
```

# **Arguments**

```
u1, u2
                  numeric vectors of equal length with values in [0,1].
                  integer; single number or vector of size length(u1); defines the bivariate cop-
family
                  ula family:
                   0 = independence copula
                   1 = Gaussian copula
                   2 = Student t copula (t-copula)
                   3 = Clayton copula
                   4 = Gumbel copula
                  5 = Frank copula
                  6 = Joe copula
                   7 = BB1 copula
                  8 = BB6 copula
                  9 = BB7 copula
                   10 = BB8 copula
                   13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")
                   14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")
                   16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")
                   17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1")
                   18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6")
                   19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7")
                   20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8")
                   23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)
                   24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)
                  26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)
                   27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees)
                   28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees)
```

BiCopHinv 49

```
29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees)
30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees)
33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)
34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)
36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)
37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees)
38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees)
39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees)
40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)
104 = \text{Tawn type } 1 \text{ copula}
114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees)
124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees)
134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees)
204 = \text{Tawn type 2 copula}
214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees)
224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees)
234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)
```

par numeric; single number or vector of size length(u1); copula parameter.

par2 numeric; single number or vector of size length(u1); second parameter for

bivariate copulas with two parameters (t, BB1, BB6, BB7, BB8, Tawn type 1 and type 2; default: par2 = 0). par2 should be an positive integer for the

Students's t copula family = 2.

obj BiCop object containing the family and parameter specification.

check.pars logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are

omitted (should only be used with care).

# Details

The h-function is defined as the conditional distribution function of a bivariate copula, i.e.,

$$h_1(u_2|u_1; \boldsymbol{\theta}) := P(U_2 \le u_2|U_1 = u_1) = \frac{\partial C(u_1, u_2; \boldsymbol{\theta})}{\partial u_1},$$

$$h_2(u_1|u_2; \boldsymbol{\theta}) := P(U_1 \le u_1|U_2 = u_2) = \frac{\partial C(u_1, u_2; \boldsymbol{\theta})}{\partial u_2},$$

where  $(U_1, U_2) \sim C$ , and C is a bivariate copula distribution function with parameter(s)  $\theta$ . For more details see Aas et al. (2009).

If the family and parameter specification is stored in a BiCop object obj, the alternative version

```
BiCopHinv(u1, u2, obj),
BiCopHinv1(u1, u2, obj),
BiCopHinv2(u1, u2, obj)
```

can be used.

50 BiCopHinv

# Value

BiCopHinv returns a list with

hinv1 Numeric vector of the inverse conditional distribution function (inverse h-function)

of the copula family with parameter(s) par, par2 evaluated at u2 given u1, i.e.,

 $h_1^{-1}(u_2|u_1;\boldsymbol{\theta}).$ 

hinv2 Numeric vector of the inverse conditional distribution function (inverse h-function)

of the copula family with parameter(s) par, par2 evaluated at u1 given u2, i.e.,

 $h_2^{-1}(u_1|u_2;\boldsymbol{\theta}).$ 

BiCopHinv1 is a faster version that only calculates hinv1; BiCopHinv2 only calculates hinv2.

# Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier, Thomas Nagler

#### References

Aas, K., C. Czado, A. Frigessi, and H. Bakken (2009). Pair-copula constructions of multiple dependence. Insurance: Mathematics and Economics 44 (2), 182-198.

#### See Also

```
{\tt BiCopHfunc, BiCopPDF, BiCopCDF, RVineLogLik, RVineSeqEst, RVineSeqEst, RVineLogLik, RVineSeqEst, RVineSeqEst, RVineLogLik, RVineSeqEst, RV
```

# **Examples**

```
# inverse h-functions of the Gaussian copula
cop <- BiCop(1, 0.5)
hi <- BiCopHinv(0.1, 0.2, cop)

# or using the fast versions
hi1 <- BiCopHinv1(0.1, 0.2, cop)
hi2 <- BiCopHinv2(0.1, 0.2, cop)
all.equal(hi$hinv1, hi1)
all.equal(hi$hinv2, hi2)

# check if it is actually the inverse
cop <- BiCop(3, 3)
all.equal(0.2, BiCopHfunc1(0.1, BiCopHinv1(0.1, 0.2, cop), cop))
all.equal(0.1, BiCopHfunc2(BiCopHinv2(0.1, 0.2, cop), 0.2, cop))</pre>
```

BiCopIndTest 51

BiCopIndTest

Independence Test for Bivariate Copula Data

# Description

This function returns the p-value of a bivariate asymptotic independence test based on Kendall's  $\tau$ .

# Usage

BiCopIndTest(u1, u2)

# **Arguments**

u1, u2

Data vectors of equal length with values in [0,1].

# **Details**

The test exploits the asymptotic normality of the test statistic

$$\mathrm{statistic} := T = \sqrt{\frac{9N(N-1)}{2(2N+5)}} \times |\hat{\tau}|,$$

where N is the number of observations (length of u1) and  $\hat{\tau}$  the empirical Kendall's tau of the data vectors u1 and u2. The p-value of the null hypothesis of bivariate independence hence is asymptotically

$$p.value = 2 \times (1 - \Phi(T))$$
,

where  $\Phi$  is the standard normal distribution function.

#### Value

statistic Test statistic of the independence test.

p. value P-value of the independence test.

# Author(s)

Jeffrey Dissmann

#### References

Genest, C. and A. C. Favre (2007). Everything you always wanted to know about copula modeling but were afraid to ask. Journal of Hydrologic Engineering, 12 (4), 347-368.

# See Also

BiCopGofTest, BiCopPar2Tau, BiCopTau2Par, BiCopSelect, RVineCopSelect, RVineStructureSelect

52 BiCopKDE

# **Examples**

```
## Example 1: Gaussian copula with large dependence parameter
cop <- BiCop(1, 0.7)
dat <- BiCopSim(500, cop)

# perform the asymptotic independence test
BiCopIndTest(dat[, 1], dat[, 2])

## Example 2: Gaussian copula with small dependence parameter
cop <- BiCop(1, 0.01)
dat <- BiCopSim(500, cop)

# perform the asymptotic independence test
BiCopIndTest(dat[, 1], dat[, 2])</pre>
```

BiCopKDE

Kernel estimate of a Bivariate Copula Density

# **Description**

A kernel density estimate of the copula density is visualized. The function provides the same options as plot.BiCop. Further arguments can be passed to kdecop to modify the estimate.

# Usage

```
BiCopKDE(u1, u2, type = "contour", margins, size, kde.pars = list(),
...)
```

# **Arguments**

u1, u2	numeric vectors of equal length with values in [0,1].	
type	plot type; either "contour" or "surface" (partial matching is activated) for a contour or perspective/surface plot respectively.	
margins	only relevant for types "contour" and "surface"; options are: "unif" for the original copula density, "norm" for the transformed density with standard normal margins, "exp" with standard exponential margins, and "flexp" with flipped exponential margins. Default is "norm" for type = "contour", and "unif" for type = "surface". "norm" for the transformed density with standard normal margins (partial matching is activated). Default is "norm" for type = "contour", and "unif" for type = "surface".	
size	integer; the plot is based on values on a size x size grid; default is 100 for type = "contour", and 25 for type = "surface".	
kde.pars	list of arguments passed to kdecop.	
	optional arguments passed to contour or wireframe.	

BiCopKPlot 53

# **Details**

For further details on estimation see kdecop.

# Author(s)

Thomas Nagler

# **Examples**

```
# simulate data from Joe copula
cop <- BiCop(3, tau = 0.3)
u <- BiCopSim(1000, cop)
contour(cop) # true contours

# kernel contours with standard normal margins
BiCopKDE(u[, 1], u[, 2])
BiCopKDE(u[, 1], u[, 2], kde.pars = list(mult = 0.5)) # undersmooth
BiCopKDE(u[, 1], u[, 2], kde.pars = list(mult = 2)) # oversmooth

# kernel density with uniform margins
BiCopKDE(u[, 1], u[, 2], type = "surface", zlim = c(0, 4))
plot(cop, zlim = c(0, 4)) # true density

# kernel contours are also used in pairs.copuladata
data(daxreturns)
data <- as.copuladata(daxreturns)
pairs(data[c(4, 5, 14, 15)])</pre>
```

BiCopKPlot

Kendall's Plot for Bivariate Copula Data

# **Description**

This function creates a Kendall's plot (K-plot) of given bivariate copula data.

# Usage

```
BiCopKPlot(u1, u2, PLOT = TRUE, ...)
```

# Arguments

u1, u2	Data vectors of equal length with values in [0,1].
PLOT	Logical; whether the results are plotted. If PLOT = FALSE, the values W.in and Hi.sort are returned (see below; default: PLOT = TRUE).
	Additional plot arguments.

54 BiCopKPlot

# **Details**

For observations  $u_{i,j}$ , i=1,...,N, j=1,2, the K-plot considers two quantities: First, the ordered values of the empirical bivariate distribution function  $H_i:=\hat{F}_{U_1U_2}(u_{i,1},u_{i,2})$  and, second,  $W_{i:N}$ , which are the expected values of the order statistics from a random sample of size N of the random variable  $W=C(U_1,U_2)$  under the null hypothesis of independence between  $U_1$  and  $U_2$ .  $W_{i:N}$  can be calculated as follows

$$W_{i:n} = N \binom{N-1}{i-1} \int_{0}^{1} \omega k_0(\omega) (K_0(\omega))^{i-1} (1 - K_0(\omega))^{N-i} d\omega,$$

where

$$K_0(\omega) = \omega - \omega \log(\omega),$$

and  $k_0(\cdot)$  is the corresponding density.

K-plots can be seen as the bivariate copula equivalent to QQ-plots. If the points of a K-plot lie approximately on the diagonal y=x, then  $U_1$  and  $U_2$  are approximately independent. Any deviation from the diagonal line points towards dependence. In case of positive dependence, the points of the K-plot should be located above the diagonal line, and vice versa for negative dependence. The larger the deviation from the diagonal, the stronger is the degree of dependency. There is a perfect positive dependence if points  $(W_{i:N}, H_i)$  lie on the curve  $K_0(\omega)$  located above the main diagonal. If points  $(W_{i:N}, H_i)$  however lie on the x-axis, this indicates a perfect negative dependence between  $U_1$  and  $U_2$ .

# Value

W. in W-statistics (x-axis).Hi. sort H-statistics (y-axis).

# Author(s)

Natalia Belgorodski, Ulf Schepsmeier

#### References

Genest, C. and A. C. Favre (2007). Everything you always wanted to know about copula modeling but were afraid to ask. Journal of Hydrologic Engineering, 12 (4), 347-368.

# See Also

BiCopMetaContour, BiCopChiPlot, BiCopLambda, BiCopGofTest

# Examples

```
## Gaussian and Clayton copulas
n <- 500
tau <- 0.5
# simulate from Gaussian copula</pre>
```

BiCopLambda 55

```
fam <- 1
par <- BiCopTau2Par(fam, tau)
cop1 <- BiCop(fam, par)
set.seed(123)
dat1 <- BiCopSim(n, cop1)

# simulate from Clayton copula
fam <- 3
par <- BiCopTau2Par(fam, tau)
cop2 <- BiCop(fam, par)
set.seed(123)
dat2 <- BiCopSim(n, cop2)

# create K-plots
op <- par(mfrow = c(1, 2))
BiCopKPlot(dat1[,1], dat1[,2], main = "Gaussian copula")
BiCopKPlot(dat2[,1], dat2[,2], main = "Clayton copula")
par(op)</pre>
```

BiCopLambda

Lambda-Function (Plot) for Bivariate Copula Data

# **Description**

This function plots/returns the lambda-function of given bivariate copula data.

# Usage

```
BiCopLambda(u1 = NULL, u2 = NULL, family = "emp", par = 0,
par2 = 0, PLOT = TRUE, obj = NULL, ...)
```

7 = BB1 copula 8 = BB6 copula

# **Arguments**

u1, u2

An integer defining the bivariate copula family or indicating the empirical lambdafunction:
"emp" = empirical lambda-function (default)

1 = Gaussian copula; the theoretical lambda-function is simulated (no closed formula available)

2 = Student-t copula; the theoretical lambda-function is simulated (no closed formula available)

3 = Clayton copula

4 = Gumbel copula

5 = Frank copula

6 = Joe copula

Data vectors of equal length with values in [0,1] (default: u1 and u2 = NULL).

56 BiCopLambda

	9 = BB7 copula 10 = BB8 copula
par	Copula parameter; if the empirical lambda-function is chosen, par = $NULL$ or 0 (default).
par2	Second copula parameter for t-, BB1, BB6, BB7 and BB8 copulas (default: $par2 = 0$ ).
PLOT	Logical; whether the results are plotted. If PLOT = FALSE, the values empLambda and/or theoLambda are returned (see below; default: PLOT = TRUE).
obj	BiCop object containing the family and parameter specification.
	Additional plot arguments.

# **Details**

If the family and parameter specification is stored in a BiCop object obj, the alternative versions

```
BiCopLambda(obj, PLOT = TRUE, ...)

and

BiCopLambda((u1, u2, obj, PLOT = TRUE, ...)

can be used.
```

# Value

empLambda If the empirical lambda-function is chosen and PLOT = FALSE, a vector of the

empirical lambda's is returned.

theoLambda If the theoretical lambda-function is chosen and PLOT = FALSE, a vector of the

theoretical lambda's is returned.

# Note

The  $\lambda$ -function is characteristic for each bivariate copula family and defined by Kendall's distribution function K:

$$\lambda(v,\theta) := v - K(v,\theta)$$

with

$$K(v,\theta) := P(C_{\theta}(U_1, U_2) \le v), \ v \in [0,1].$$

For Archimedean copulas one has the following closed form expression in terms of the generator function  $\varphi$  of the copula  $C_{\theta}$ :

$$\lambda(v,\theta) = \frac{\varphi(v)}{\varphi'(v)},$$

where  $\varphi'$  is the derivative of  $\varphi$ . For more details see Genest and Rivest (1993) or Schepsmeier (2010).

For the bivariate Gaussian and Student-t copula no closed form expression for the theoretical  $\lambda$ -function exists. Therefore it is simulated based on samples of size 1000. For all other implemented copula families there are closed form expressions available.

BiCopMetaContour 57

The plot of the theoretical  $\lambda$ -function also shows the limits of the  $\lambda$ -function corresponding to Kendall's tau = 0 and Kendall's tau = 1 ( $\lambda$  = 0).

For rotated bivariate copulas one has to transform the input arguments u1 and/or u2. In particular, for copulas rotated by 90 degrees u1 has to be set to 1-u1, for 270 degrees u2 to 1-u2 and for survival copulas u1 and u2 to 1-u1 and 1-u2, respectively. Then  $\lambda$ -functions for the corresponding non-rotated copula families can be considered.

# Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier

#### References

Genest, C. and L.-P. Rivest (1993). Statistical inference procedures for bivariate Archimedean copulas. Journal of the American Statistical Association, 88 (423), 1034-1043.

Schepsmeier, U. (2010). Maximum likelihood estimation of C-vine pair-copula constructions based on bivariate copulas from different families. Diploma thesis, Technische Universitaet Muenchen. http://mediatum.ub.tum.de/?id=1079296.

# See Also

BiCopMetaContour, BiCopKPlot, BiCopChiPlot, BiCop

# **Examples**

```
# simulate from Clayton copula
cop <- BiCop(3, tau = 0.5)
dat <- BiCopSim(1000, cop)

# create lambda-function plots
op <- par(mfrow = c(1, 3))
BiCopLambda(dat[, 1], dat[, 2]) # empirical lambda-function
BiCopLambda(cop) # theoretical lambda-function
BiCopLambda(dat[, 1], dat[, 2], cop) # both
par(op)</pre>
```

BiCopMetaContour

Contour Plot of Bivariate Meta Distribution

# **Description**

Note: This function is deprecated and only available for backwards compatibility. See contour.BiCop for contour plots of parametric copulas, and BiCopKDE for kernel estimates.

58 BiCopMetaContour

# Usage

```
BiCopMetaContour(u1 = NULL, u2 = NULL, bw = 1, size = 100, levels = c(0.01, 0.05, 0.1, 0.15, 0.2), family = "emp", par = 0, par2 = 0, PLOT = TRUE, margins = "norm", margins.par = 0, xylim = NA, obj = NULL, ...)
```

# **Arguments**

Data vectors of equal length with values in [0,1] (default: u1 and u2 = NULL). u1, u2 Bandwidth (smoothing factor; default: bw = 1). bw size Number of grid points; default: size = 100. levels Vector of contour levels. For Gaussian, Student-t or exponential margins the default value (levels = c(0.01, 0.05, 0.1, 0.15, 0.2)) typically is a good choice. For uniform margins we recommend levels = c(0.1, 0.3, 0.5, 0.7, 0.9, 1.1, 1.3, 1.5)and for Gamma margins levels = c(0.005, 0.01, 0.03, 0.05, 0.07, 0.09). family An integer defining the bivariate copula family or indicating an empirical contour plot: "emp" = empirical contour plot (default; margins can be specified by margins) 0 = independence copula 1 = Gaussian copula 2 = Student t copula (t-copula) 3 = Clayton copula 4 = Gumbel copula 5 = Frank copula 6 =Joe copula 7 = BB1 copula 8 = BB6 copula9 = BB7 copula10 = BB8 copula13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton") 14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel") 16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe") 17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1") 18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6") 19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7") 20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8") 23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees) 24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees) 26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees) 27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees) 28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees) 29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees) 30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees) 33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees) 34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)

BiCopMetaContour

36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees) 37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees) 38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees) 39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees) 40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees) 104 = Tawn type 1 copula114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees) 124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees) 134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees) 204 = Tawn type 2 copula 214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees) 224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees) 234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees) Copula parameter; if empirical contour plot, par = NULL or 0 (default). par Second copula parameter for t-, BB1, BB6, BB7, BB8, Tawn type 1 and type 2 par2 copulas (default: par2 = 0). **PLOT** Logical; whether the results are plotted. If PLOT = FALSE, the values x, y and z are returned (see below; default: PLOT = TRUE). margins Character; margins for the bivariate copula contour plot. Possible margins are: "norm" = standard normal margins (default) "t" = Student t margins with degrees of freedom as specified by margins.par "gamma" = Gamma margins with shape and scale as specified by margins.par "exp" = Exponential margins with rate as specified by margins.par "unif" = uniform margins Parameter(s) of the distribution of the margins if necessary (default: margins.par =  $\emptyset$ ), margins.par • a positive real number for the degrees of freedom of Student t margins (see dt), • a 2-dimensional vector of positive real numbers for the shape and scale parameters of Gamma margins (see dgamma), • a positive real number for the rate parameter of exponential margins (see dexp). A 2-dimensional vector of the x- and y-limits. By default (xylim = NA) standard xylim limits for the selected margins are used. obj BiCop object containing the family and parameter specification. Additional plot arguments. Value Х A vector of length size with the x-values of the kernel density estimator with Gaussian kernel if the empirical contour plot is chosen and a sequence of values in xylim if the theoretical contour plot is chosen. A vector of length size with the y-values of the kernel density estimator with У Gaussian kernel if the empirical contour plot is chosen and a sequence of values in xylim if the theoretical contour plot is chosen.

59

60 BiCopName

Z

A matrix of dimension size with the values of the density of the meta distribution with chosen margins (see margins and margins.par) evaluated at the grid points given by x and y.

#### Note

The combination family = 0 (independence copula) and margins = "unif" (uniform margins) is not possible because all z-values are equal.

# Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier, Alexander Bauer

# See Also

```
BiCopChiPlot, BiCopKPlot, BiCopLambda
```

# Examples

```
## meta Clayton distribution with Gaussian margins
cop \leftarrow BiCop(family = 1, tau = 0.5)
BiCopMetaContour(obj = cop, main = "Clayton - normal margins")
contour(cop, main = "Clayton - normal margins")
## empirical contour plot with standard normal margins
dat <- BiCopSim(1000, cop)</pre>
BiCopMetaContour(dat[, 1], dat[, 2], bw = 2, family = "emp",
                 main = "empirical - normal margins")
# better:
BiCopKDE(dat[, 1], dat[, 2],
        main = "empirical - normal margins")
## empirical contour plot with exponential margins
BiCopMetaContour(dat[, 1], dat[, 2], bw = 2,
                 main = "empirical - exponential margins",
                 margins = "exp", margins.par = 1)
# better:
BiCopKDE(dat[, 1], dat[, 2],
         main = "empirical - exponential margins",
         margins = "exp")
```

BiCopName

Bivariate Copula Family Names

# **Description**

This function transforms the bivariate copula family number into its character expression and vice versa.

BiCopName 61

# Usage

```
BiCopName(family, short = TRUE)
```

# Arguments

family Bivariate copula family, either its number or its character expression (see table below).

0 "I" "Independence" 1 "N" "Gaussian" 2 "t" "t" 3 "C" "Clayton" 4 "G" "Gumbel" 5 "F" "Frank" 6 "J" "Joe" 7 "BB1" "BB1" "BB1" 8 "BB6" "BB6" "BB6" 9 "BB7" "BB7" 10 "BB8" "Frank-Joe" 13 "SC" "Survival Clayton" 14 "SG" "Survival BB1" 18 "SBB6" "Survival BB1" 18 "SBB6" "Survival BB1" 18 "SBB6" "Survival BB1" 18 "SBB6" "Survival BB7" 20 "SB88" "Survival BB7" 20 "SB88" "Survival BB7" 20 "SB88" "Survival BB8" 23 "C90" "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees" 24 "G90" "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees" 26 "J90" "Rotated BB1 90 degrees" 27 "BB1_90" "Rotated BB6 90 degrees" 28 "BB6_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 29 "BB7_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 30 "BB8_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 31 "C270" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 32 "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 33 "C270" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 34 "G270" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 35 "BB1_270" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 36 "J270" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 37 "BB1_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 38 "BB6_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "Tawn" "Tawn type 1" 114 "Tawn180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees" 124 "Tawn2" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 134 "Tawn2" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 135 "Tawn2" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 136 "Tawn2" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 137 "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 138 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees" 139 "Tawn2_90" "Rotated Tawn type 2 90 degrees" 130 "Tawn2_90" "Rotated Tawn type 2 90 degrees" 131 "Tawn2_90" "Rotated Tawn type 2 90 degrees" 132 "Tawn2_90" "Rotated Tawn type 2 90 degrees"	No.	Short name	Long name
2 "t" "t" "Clayton" 4 "G" "Gumbel" 5 "F" "Frank" 6 "J" "Joe" 7 "BB1" "BB1" "BB1" 8 "BB6" "BB6" "BB6" 9 "BB7" "BB7" 10 "BB8" "Frank-Joe" 13 "SC" "Survival Clayton" 14 "SG" "Survival Gumbel" 16 "SJ" "Survival BB1" 18 "SB86" "Survival BB1" 18 "SB86" "Survival BB1" 19 "SB81" "Survival BB6" 19 "SB87" "Survival BB8" 20 "SB88" "Survival BB8" 21 "C90" "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees" 22 "G90" "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees" 23 "C90" "Rotated BB1 90 degrees" 24 "G90" "Rotated BB1 90 degrees" 27 "BB1_90" "Rotated BB6 90 degrees" 28 "BB6_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 30 "BB8_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 31 "C270" "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees" 32 "G270" "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" 33 "C270" "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" 34 "G270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 37 "BB1_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 38 "BB6_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees" 104 "Tawn" "Tawn type 1" 114 "Tawn180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees" 126 "Tawn2" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 137 "Tawn type 2" 140 "Tawn2" "Tawn type 2"	0	"I"	"Independence"
3         "C"         "Clayton"           4         "G"         "Gumbel"           5         "F"         "Frank"           6         "J"         "Joe"           7         "BB1"         "BB1"           8         "BB6"         "BB6"           9         "BB7"         "BB7"           10         "BB8"         "Frank-Joe"           13         "SC"         "Survival Clayton"           14         "SG"         "Survival Joe"           16         "SJ"         "Survival Joe"           17         "SBB1"         "Survival BB1"           18         "SBB6"         "Survival BB6"           19         "SBB7"         "Survival BB7"           20         "SBB8"         "Survival BB8"           23         "C90"         "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees"           24         "G90"         "Rotated Joe 90 degrees"           26         "J90"         "Rotated BB1 90 degrees"           28         "BB6_90"         "Rotated BB6 90 degrees"           29         "BB7_90"         "Rotated BB6 90 degrees"           30         "BB8_90"         "Rotated BB7 90 degrees"           30         "BB8_90"         <	1	"N"	"Gaussian"
4 "G" "Gumbel" 5 "F" "Frank" 6 "J" "Joe" 7 "BB1" "BB1" "BB6" 9 "BB7" "BB7" 10 "BB8" "Frank-Joe" 13 "SC" "Survival Clayton" 14 "SG" "Survival Gumbel" 16 "SJ" "Survival BB1" 18 "SB86" "Survival BB1" 18 "SB86" "Survival BB6" 19 "SB7" "Survival BB7" 20 "SB88" "Survival BB8" 23 "C90" "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees" 24 "G90" "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees" 26 "J90" "Rotated BB1 90 degrees" 27 "BB1_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 28 "BB6_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 30 "BB8_90" "Rotated Frank-Joe 90 degrees" 31 "C270" "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" 33 "C270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 34 "G270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 35 "BB1_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 36 "J270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 37 "BB1_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 38 "BB6_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB6 270 degrees" 30 "BB8_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 31 "Tawn 270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees" 32 "Tawn 180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees" 33 "Tawn 180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees" 34 "Tawn 180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 36 "Tawn 180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 37 "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 38 "Tawn 180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 39 "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 30 "Tawn 180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 314 "Tawn 180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 315 "Tawn 180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 316 "Tawn 180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 317 "Tawn 180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"			"t"
5 "F" "Joe" 7 "BB1" "BB1" 8 "BB6" "BB6" 9 "BB7" "BB7" 10 "BB8" "Frank-Joe" 13 "SC" "Survival Clayton" 14 "SG" "Survival Joe" 17 "SBB1" "Survival BB1" 18 "SB86" "Survival BB1" 18 "SB86" "Survival BB6" 19 "SB7" "Survival BB7" 20 "SB88" "Survival BB8" 23 "C90" "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees" 24 "G90" "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees" 26 "J90" "Rotated BB1 90 degrees" 27 "BB1_90" "Rotated BB6 90 degrees" 28 "BB6_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 29 "BB7_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 30 "BB8_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 31 "C270" "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" 32 "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" 33 "C270" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 34 "G270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 35 "BB1_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 36 "J270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 37 "BB1_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 38 "BB6_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees" 40 "Tawn" "Tawn type 1" 41 "Tawn180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees" 42 "Tawn20" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 43 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 44 "Tawn2" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 45 "Tawn2" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 46 "Tawn2" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 47 "Tawn type 2" 48 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"			"Clayton"
6       "J"       "Joe"         7       "BB1"       "BB1"         8       "BB6"       "BB6"         9       "BB7"       "BB7"         10       "BB8"       "Frank-Joe"         13       "SC"       "Survival Clayton"         14       "SG"       "Survival Gumbel"         16       "SJ"       "Survival BB1"         18       "SBB6"       "Survival BB6"         19       "SBB7"       "Survival BB8"         20       "SB88"       "Survival BB8"         23       "C90"       "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees"         24       "G90"       "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees"         26       "J90"       "Rotated BB1 90 degrees"         27       "BB1_90"       "Rotated BB6 90 degrees"         28       "BB6_90"       "Rotated BB7 90 degrees"         30       "BB8_90"       "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees"         34       "G270"       "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees"         34       "G270"       "Rotated BB1 270 degrees"         36       "J270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         37       "BB1_270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         39       "BB7_270"       "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" </td <td>4</td> <td></td> <td>"Gumbel"</td>	4		"Gumbel"
7 "BB1" "BB6" "BB6" 9 "BB7" "BB7" "BB7" 10 "BB8" "Frank-Joe" 13 "SC" "Survival Clayton" 14 "SG" "Survival Joe" 17 "SBB1" "Survival BB1" 18 "SBB6" "Survival BB6" 19 "SB87" "Survival BB7" 20 "SBB8" "Survival BB8" 23 "C90" "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees" 24 "G90" "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees" 26 "J90" "Rotated BB1 90 degrees" 27 "BB1_90" "Rotated BB1 90 degrees" 28 "BB6_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 29 "BB7_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 30 "BB8_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 31 "C270" "Rotated Frank-Joe 90 degrees" 32 "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees" 33 "C270" "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" 34 "G270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 36 "J270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 37 "BB1_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 38 "BB6_270" "Rotated BB6 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 30 "BB8_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 31 "Tawn "Tawn type 1" 31 "Tawn" "Tawn type 1" 31 "Tawn" "Tawn type 1" 31 "Tawn" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees" 32 "Tawn type 2" 33 "Tawn type 2" 34 "Tawn2" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 35 "Tawn type 2" 36 "Tawn type 2" 37 "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 38 "B66_270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees" 39 "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 39 "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 30 "Tawn type 2" 31 "Tawn2" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	5	"F"	
8 "BB6"       "BB7"         9 "BB7"       "BB7"         10 "BB8"       "Frank-Joe"         13 "SC"       "Survival Clayton"         14 "SG"       "Survival Gumbel"         16 "SJ"       "Survival BB1"         17 "SBB1"       "Survival BB6"         19 "SB86"       "Survival BB6"         19 "SB87"       "Survival BB7"         20 "SB88"       "Survival BB8"         23 "C90"       "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees"         24 "G90"       "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees"         25 "J90"       "Rotated BB1 90 degrees"         26 "J90"       "Rotated BB6 90 degrees"         27 "BB1_90"       "Rotated BB6 90 degrees"         28 "BB6_90"       "Rotated BB7 90 degrees"         30 "BB8_90"       "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees"         31 "C270"       "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees"         34 "G270"       "Rotated BB1 270 degrees"         37 "BB1_270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         38 "BB6_270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         39 "BB7_270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         40 "BB8_270"       "Rotated BB7 270 degrees"         40 "BB8_270"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees"         104 "Tawn"       "Tawn type 1"         114	6	"J"	"Joe"
9 "BB7" "BB7" 10 "BB8" "Frank-Joe" 13 "SC" "Survival Clayton" 14 "SG" "Survival Gumbel" 16 "SJ" "Survival BB1" 18 "SBB6" "Survival BB6" 19 "SB87" "Survival BB6" 20 "SB88" "Survival BB8" 23 "C90" "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees" 24 "G90" "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees" 26 "J90" "Rotated BB1 90 degrees" 27 "BB1_90" "Rotated BB 90 degrees" 28 "BB6_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 29 "BB7_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 30 "BB8_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 31 "C270" "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees" 33 "C270" "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" 34 "G270" "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" 36 "J270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 37 "BB1_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 38 "BB6_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees" 104 "Tawn" "Tawn type 1" 114 "Tawn180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees" 124 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 134 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 134 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 134 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees" 134 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	7	"BB1"	"BB1"
10       "BB8"       "Frank-Joe"         13       "SC"       "Survival Clayton"         14       "SG"       "Survival Gumbel"         16       "SJ"       "Survival Joe"         17       "SBB1"       "Survival BB1"         18       "SBB6"       "Survival BB6"         19       "SBB7"       "Survival BB8"         20       "SBB8"       "Survival BB8"         23       "C90"       "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees"         24       "G90"       "Rotated Joe 90 degrees"         26       "J90"       "Rotated BB1 90 degrees"         27       "BB1_90"       "Rotated BB6 90 degrees"         28       "BB6_90"       "Rotated BB6 90 degrees"         29       "BB7_90"       "Rotated BB7 90 degrees"         30       "BB8_90"       "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees"         34       "G270"       "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees"         34       "G270"       "Rotated BB1 270 degrees"         36       "J270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         37       "BB1_270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         39       "BB7_270"       "Rotated BB7 270 degrees"         40       "BB8_270"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees"	8	"BB6"	"BB6"
13         "SC"         "Survival Clayton"           14         "SG"         "Survival Gumbel"           16         "SJ"         "Survival Joe"           17         "SBB1"         "Survival BB1"           18         "SBB6"         "Survival BB6"           19         "SBB7"         "Survival BB7"           20         "SBB8"         "Survival BB8"           23         "C90"         "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees"           24         "G90"         "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees"           26         "J90"         "Rotated BB1 90 degrees"           27         "BB1_90"         "Rotated BB6 90 degrees"           28         "BB6_90"         "Rotated BB6 90 degrees"           29         "BB7_90"         "Rotated BB7 90 degrees"           30         "BB8_90"         "Rotated BB7 90 degrees"           31         "C270"         "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees"           34         "G270"         "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees"           36         "J270"         "Rotated BB1 270 degrees"           37         "BB1_270"         "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"           39         "BB7_270"         "Rotated BB7 270 degrees"           40         "BB8_270"         "Rotated Tawn type 1	9	"BB7"	"BB7"
14       "SG"       "Survival Gumbel"         16       "SJ"       "Survival Joe"         17       "SBB1"       "Survival BB1"         18       "SBB6"       "Survival BB6"         19       "SBB7"       "Survival BB8"         20       "SB88"       "Survival BB8"         23       "C90"       "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees"         24       "G90"       "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees"         26       "J90"       "Rotated BB1 90 degrees"         27       "BB1_90"       "Rotated BB6 90 degrees"         28       "BB6_90"       "Rotated BB7 90 degrees"         30       "BB8_90"       "Rotated BB7 90 degrees"         30       "BB8_90"       "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees"         31       "C270"       "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees"         34       "G270"       "Rotated BB1 270 degrees"         36       "J270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         37       "BB1_270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         39       "BB7_270"       "Rotated BB7 270 degrees"         40       "BB8_270"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees"         104       "Tawn 180"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees"         124       "Tawn 20"	10	"BB8"	"Frank-Joe"
16       "SJ"       "Survival Joe"         17       "SBB1"       "Survival BB1"         18       "SBB6"       "Survival BB6"         19       "SBB7"       "Survival BB7"         20       "SBB8"       "Survival BB8"         23       "C90"       "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees"         24       "G90"       "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees"         26       "J90"       "Rotated BB1 90 degrees"         27       "BB1_90"       "Rotated BB6 90 degrees"         28       "BB6_90"       "Rotated BB7 90 degrees"         30       "BB8_90"       "Rotated Frank-Joe 90 degrees"         31       "C270"       "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees"         34       "G270"       "Rotated Joe 270 degrees"         36       "J270"       "Rotated BB1 270 degrees"         37       "BB1_270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         39       "BB7_270"       "Rotated BB7 270 degrees"         40       "BB8_270"       "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees"         40       "BB8_270"       "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees"         104       "Tawn"       "Tawn type 1"         114       "Tawn180"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees"         124       "Tawn270"	13	"SC"	"Survival Clayton"
17       "SBB1"       "Survival BB6"         18       "SBB6"       "Survival BB6"         19       "SBB7"       "Survival BB7"         20       "SBB8"       "Survival BB8"         23       "C90"       "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees"         24       "G90"       "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees"         26       "J90"       "Rotated BB1 90 degrees"         27       "BB1_90"       "Rotated BB6 90 degrees"         28       "BB6_90"       "Rotated BB7 90 degrees"         29       "BB7_90"       "Rotated BB7 90 degrees"         30       "BB8_90"       "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees"         34       "G270"       "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees"         36       "J270"       "Rotated BB1 270 degrees"         37       "BB1_270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         39       "BB7_270"       "Rotated BB7 270 degrees"         40       "BB8_270"       "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees"         104       "Tawn"       "Tawn type 1"         114       "Tawn180"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees"         124       "Tawn90"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees"         134       "Tawn270"       "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"         204 <td>14</td> <td>"SG"</td> <td>"Survival Gumbel"</td>	14	"SG"	"Survival Gumbel"
18       "SBB6"       "Survival BB6"         19       "SBB7"       "Survival BB7"         20       "SBB8"       "Survival BB8"         23       "C90"       "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees"         24       "G90"       "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees"         26       "J90"       "Rotated BB1 90 degrees"         27       "BB1_90"       "Rotated BB1 90 degrees"         28       "BB6_90"       "Rotated BB7 90 degrees"         29       "BB7_90"       "Rotated BB7 90 degrees"         30       "BB8_90"       "Rotated Frank-Joe 90 degrees"         31       "C270"       "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees"         34       "G270"       "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees"         36       "J270"       "Rotated BB1 270 degrees"         37       "BB1_270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         39       "BB7_270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         40       "BB8_270"       "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees"         104       "Tawn"       "Tawn type 1"         114       "Tawn"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees"         124       "Tawn90"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees"         124       "Tawn90"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees"	16	"SJ"	"Survival Joe"
"SBB7" "Survival BB8" "C90" "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees" "J90" "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees" "BB1_90" "Rotated BB1 90 degrees" "BB1_90" "Rotated BB1 90 degrees" "BB6_90" "Rotated BB6 90 degrees" "BB7_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" "BB7_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" "BB8_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" "Rotated Frank-Joe 90 degrees" "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees" "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" "Rotated BB6 270 degrees" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees" "Tawn "Tawn type 1" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees" "Tawn2" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" "Tawn type 2" "Tawn type 2"	17	"SBB1"	"Survival BB1"
20 "SBB8"       "Survival BB8"         23 "C90"       "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees"         24 "G90"       "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees"         26 "J90"       "Rotated Joe 90 degrees"         27 "BB1_90"       "Rotated BB1 90 degrees"         28 "BB6_90"       "Rotated BB6 90 degrees"         29 "BB7_90"       "Rotated BB7 90 degrees"         30 "BB8_90"       "Rotated Frank-Joe 90 degrees"         31 "C270"       "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees"         34 "G270"       "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees"         36 "J270"       "Rotated BB1 270 degrees"         37 "BB1_270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         38 "BB6_270"       "Rotated BB7 270 degrees"         40 "BB8_270"       "Rotated BB7 270 degrees"         40 "BB8_270"       "Rotated BB7 270 degrees"         104 "Tawn"       "Tawn type 1"         114 "Tawn180"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees"         124 "Tawn90"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees"         134 "Tawn270"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees"         204 "Tawn2"       "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	18	"SBB6"	"Survival BB6"
23       "C90"       "Rotated Clayton 90 degrees"         24       "G90"       "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees"         26       "J90"       "Rotated Joe 90 degrees"         27       "BB1_90"       "Rotated BB1 90 degrees"         28       "BB6_90"       "Rotated BB6 90 degrees"         29       "BB7_90"       "Rotated BB7 90 degrees"         30       "BB8_90"       "Rotated Frank-Joe 90 degrees"         31       "C270"       "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees"         34       "G270"       "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees"         36       "J270"       "Rotated BB1 270 degrees"         37       "BB1_270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         38       "BB6_270"       "Rotated BB7 270 degrees"         40       "BB8_270"       "Rotated BB7 270 degrees"         40       "BB8_270"       "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees"         104       "Tawn"       "Tawn type 1"         114       "Tawn90"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees"         124       "Tawn90"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees"         124       "Tawn270"       "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"         204       "Tawn2"       "Tawn type 2"         214       "Tawn2_180"       "Rotated Tawn type 2	19	"SBB7"	"Survival BB7"
24 "G90" "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees" 26 "J90" "Rotated Joe 90 degrees" 27 "BB1_90" "Rotated BB1 90 degrees" 28 "BB6_90" "Rotated BB6 90 degrees" 29 "BB7_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 30 "BB8_90" "Rotated Frank-Joe 90 degrees" 31 "C270" "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees" 32 "G270" "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" 33 "G270" "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" 34 "G270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 36 "J270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 37 "BB1_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 38 "BB6_270" "Rotated BB6 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees" 104 "Tawn" "Tawn type 1" 114 "Tawn180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees" 124 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 204 "Tawn2" "Tawn type 2" 214 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	20	"SBB8"	"Survival BB8"
24 "G90" "Rotated Gumbel 90 degrees" 26 "J90" "Rotated Joe 90 degrees" 27 "BB1_90" "Rotated BB1 90 degrees" 28 "BB6_90" "Rotated BB6 90 degrees" 29 "BB7_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 30 "BB8_90" "Rotated Frank-Joe 90 degrees" 31 "C270" "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees" 32 "G270" "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" 33 "C270" "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" 34 "G270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 37 "BB1_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 38 "BB6_270" "Rotated BB6 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB6 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees" 40 "Tawn" "Tawn type 1" 41 "Tawn180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees" 41 "Tawn90" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees" 42 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 43 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees" 44 "Tawn2" "Tawn type 2" 45 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	23	"C90"	"Rotated Clayton 90 degrees"
27 "BB1_90" "Rotated BB1 90 degrees" 28 "BB6_90" "Rotated BB6 90 degrees" 29 "BB7_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 30 "BB8_90" "Rotated Frank-Joe 90 degrees" 31 "C270" "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees" 32 "G270" "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" 33 "J270" "Rotated Joe 270 degrees" 34 "BB1_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 38 "BB6_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB6 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees" 40 "Tawn" "Tawn type 1" 40 "Tawn" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees" 41 "Tawn90" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees" 42 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 43 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees" 44 "Tawn2" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	24	"G90"	
28 "BB6_90" "Rotated BB6 90 degrees" 29 "BB7_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 30 "BB8_90" "Rotated Frank-Joe 90 degrees" 33 "C270" "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees" 34 "G270" "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" 36 "J270" "Rotated Joe 270 degrees" 37 "BB1_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 38 "BB6_270" "Rotated BB6 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees" 104 "Tawn" "Tawn type 1" 114 "Tawn180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees" 124 "Tawn90" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees" 134 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 204 "Tawn2" "Tawn type 2" 214 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	26	"J90"	"Rotated Joe 90 degrees"
29 "BB7_90" "Rotated BB7 90 degrees" 30 "BB8_90" "Rotated Frank-Joe 90 degrees" 33 "C270" "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees" 34 "G270" "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees" 36 "J270" "Rotated Joe 270 degrees" 37 "BB1_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 38 "BB6_270" "Rotated BB6 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees" 104 "Tawn" "Tawn type 1" 114 "Tawn180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees" 124 "Tawn90" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees" 134 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 204 "Tawn2" "Tawn type 2" 214 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	27	"BB1_90"	"Rotated BB1 90 degrees"
30       "BB8_90"       "Rotated Frank-Joe 90 degrees"         33       "C270"       "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees"         34       "G270"       "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees"         36       "J270"       "Rotated Joe 270 degrees"         37       "BB1_270"       "Rotated BB1 270 degrees"         38       "BB6_270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         39       "BB7_270"       "Rotated BB7 270 degrees"         40       "BB8_270"       "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees"         104       "Tawn"       "Tawn type 1"         114       "Tawn180"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees"         124       "Tawn90"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees"         134       "Tawn270"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees"         204       "Tawn2"       "Tawn type 2"         214       "Tawn2_180"       "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	28	"BB6_90"	"Rotated BB6 90 degrees"
33       "C270"       "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees"         34       "G270"       "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees"         36       "J270"       "Rotated Joe 270 degrees"         37       "BB1_270"       "Rotated BB1 270 degrees"         38       "BB6_270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         39       "BB7_270"       "Rotated BB7 270 degrees"         40       "BB8_270"       "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees"         104       "Tawn"       "Tawn type 1"         114       "Tawn180"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees"         124       "Tawn270"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees"         204       "Tawn2"       "Tawn type 2"         214       "Tawn2_180"       "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	29	"BB7_90"	"Rotated BB7 90 degrees"
33       "C270"       "Rotated Clayton 270 degrees"         34       "G270"       "Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees"         36       "J270"       "Rotated Joe 270 degrees"         37       "BB1_270"       "Rotated BB1 270 degrees"         38       "BB6_270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         39       "BB7_270"       "Rotated BB7 270 degrees"         40       "BB8_270"       "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees"         104       "Tawn"       "Tawn type 1"         114       "Tawn180"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees"         124       "Tawn270"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees"         204       "Tawn2"       "Tawn type 2"         214       "Tawn2_180"       "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	30	"BB8_90"	"Rotated Frank-Joe 90 degrees"
36       "J270"       "Rotated Joe 270 degrees"         37       "BB1_270"       "Rotated BB1 270 degrees"         38       "BB6_270"       "Rotated BB6 270 degrees"         39       "BB7_270"       "Rotated BB7 270 degrees"         40       "BB8_270"       "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees"         104       "Tawn"       "Tawn type 1"         114       "Tawn180"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees"         124       "Tawn90"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees"         134       "Tawn270"       "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees"         204       "Tawn2"       "Tawn type 2"         214       "Tawn2_180"       "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	33	"C270"	
37 "BB1_270" "Rotated BB1 270 degrees" 38 "BB6_270" "Rotated BB6 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees" 104 "Tawn" "Tawn type 1" 114 "Tawn180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees" 124 "Tawn90" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees" 134 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 204 "Tawn2" "Tawn type 2" 214 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	34	"G270"	"Rotated Gumbel 270 degrees"
38 "BB6_270" "Rotated BB6 270 degrees" 39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees" 104 "Tawn" "Tawn type 1" 114 "Tawn180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees" 124 "Tawn90" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees" 134 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 204 "Tawn2" "Tawn type 2" 214 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	36	"J270"	"Rotated Joe 270 degrees"
39 "BB7_270" "Rotated BB7 270 degrees" 40 "BB8_270" "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees" 104 "Tawn" "Tawn type 1" 114 "Tawn180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees" 124 "Tawn90" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees" 134 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 204 "Tawn2" "Tawn type 2" 214 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	37	"BB1_270"	"Rotated BB1 270 degrees"
40 "BB8_270" "Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees"  104 "Tawn" "Tawn type 1"  114 "Tawn180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees"  124 "Tawn90" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees"  134 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees"  204 "Tawn2" "Tawn type 2"  214 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	38	"BB6_270"	"Rotated BB6 270 degrees"
104 "Tawn" "Tawn type 1"  114 "Tawn180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees"  124 "Tawn90" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees"  134 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees"  204 "Tawn2" "Tawn type 2"  214 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	39	"BB7_270"	"Rotated BB7 270 degrees"
114 "Tawn180" "Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees" 124 "Tawn90" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees" 134 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 204 "Tawn2" "Tawn type 2" 214 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	40	"BB8_270"	"Rotated Frank-Joe 270 degrees"
124 "Tawn90" "Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees" 134 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 204 "Tawn2" "Tawn type 2" 214 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	104	"Tawn"	"Tawn type 1"
134 "Tawn270" "Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees" 204 "Tawn2" "Tawn type 2" 214 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	114	"Tawn180"	"Rotated Tawn type 1 180 degrees"
204 "Tawn2" "Tawn type 2" 214 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	124	"Tawn90"	"Rotated Tawn type 1 90 degrees"
214 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	134	"Tawn270"	"Rotated Tawn type 1 270 degrees"
214 "Tawn2_180" "Rotated Tawn type 2 180 degrees"	204	"Tawn2"	"Tawn type 2"
	214	"Tawn2_180"	
	224	"Tawn2_90"	

62 BiCopPar2Beta

```
234 "Tawn2_270" "Rotated Tawn type 2 270 degrees"
```

short

Logical; if the number of a bivariate copula family is used and short = TRUE (default), a short version of the corresponding character expression is returned, otherwise the long version.

# Value

The transformed bivariate copula family (see table above).

# Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier

# See Also

RVineTreePlot

# **Examples**

```
## family number to character expression
family <- 1
BiCopName(family, short = TRUE) # short version
BiCopName(family, short = FALSE) # long version

## family character expression (short version) to number
family <- "C"
BiCopName(family) # as number

## family character expression (long version) to number
family <- "Clayton"
BiCopName(family) # as number

## vectors of families
BiCopName(1:10) # as character expression
BiCopName(c("Clayton", "t", "J")) # as number</pre>
```

BiCopPar2Beta

Blomqvist's Beta Value of a Bivariate Copula

# **Description**

This function computes the theoretical Blomqvist's beta value of a bivariate copula for given parameter values.

63 BiCopPar2Beta

# Usage

```
BiCopPar2Beta(family, par, par2 = 0, obj = NULL, check.pars = TRUE)
```

### **Arguments**

```
family
                   integer; single number or vector of size n; defines the bivariate copula family:
                   0 = independence copula
                   2 = Student t copula (t-copula)
                   1 = Gaussian copula
                   3 = Clayton copula
                   4 = Gumbel copula
                   5 = Frank copula
                   6 = Joe copula
                   7 = BB1 copula
                   8 = BB6 copula
                   9 = BB7 copula
                   10 = BB8 copula
                   13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")
                   14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")
                   16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")
                   17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1")
                   18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6")
                   19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7")
                   20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8")
                   23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)
                   24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)
                   26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)
                   27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees)
                   28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees)
                   29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees)
                   30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees)
                   33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)
                   34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)
                   36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)
                   37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees)
                   38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees)
                   39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees)
                   40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)
                   104 = \text{Tawn type } 1 \text{ copula}
                   114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees)
                   124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees)
                   134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees)
                   204 = \text{Tawn type } 2 \text{ copula}
                   214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees)
                   224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees)
                   234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)
```

Note that the Student's t-copula is not allowed since the CDF of the t-copula is not implemented (see BiCopCDF).

64 BiCopPar2Beta

par	numeric; single number or vector of size n; copula parameter.	
par2	numeric; single number or vector of size n; second parameter for the two parameter BB1, BB6, BB7, BB8, Tawn type 1 and type 2 copulas (default: par2 = 0).	
obj	BiCop object containing the family and parameter specification.	
check.pars	logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are	

# Details

If the family and parameter specification is stored in a BiCop object obj, the alternative version

omitted (should only be used with care).

```
BiCopPar2Beta(obj) can be used.
```

#### Value

Theoretical value of Blomqvist's beta corresponding to the bivariate copula family and parameter(s) par, par2.

# Note

The number n can be chosen arbitrarily, but must agree across arguments.

# Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier

### References

Blomqvist, N. (1950). On a measure of dependence between two random variables. The Annals of Mathematical Statistics, 21(4), 593-600.

Nelsen, R. (2006). An introduction to copulas. Springer

# **Examples**

```
## Example 1: Gaussian copula
BiCopPar2Beta(family = 1, par = 0.7)
BiCop(1, 0.7)$beta # alternative

## Example 2: Clayton copula
BiCopPar2Beta(family = 3, par = 2)

## Example 3: different copula families
BiCopPar2Beta(family = c(3,4,6), par = 2:4)
```

BiCopPar2TailDep 65

BiCopPar2TailDep

Tail Dependence Coefficients of a Bivariate Copula

# **Description**

This function computes the theoretical tail dependence coefficients of a bivariate copula for given parameter values.

# Usage

```
BiCopPar2TailDep(family, par, par2 = 0, obj = NULL,
    check.pars = TRUE)
```

## **Arguments**

family

integer; single number or vector of size n; defines the bivariate copula family:

0 = independence copula

1 = Gaussian copula

2 = Student t copula (t-copula)

3 = Clayton copula

4 = Gumbel copula

5 = Frank copula

6 = Joe copula

7 = BB1 copula

8 = BB6 copula

9 = BB7 copula

10 = BB8 copula

13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")

14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")

16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")

17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1")

18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6")

19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7")

20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8")

23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)

24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)

26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)

27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees)

28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees) 29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees)

30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees)

33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)

34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)

36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)

37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees)

38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees)

39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees)

66 BiCopPar2TailDep

40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)

104 = Tawn type 1 copula

114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees) 124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees) 134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees)

204 = Tawn type 2 copula

214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees) 224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees) 234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)

par numeric; single number or vector of size n; copula parameter.

numeric; single number or vector of size n; second parameter for bivariate copulas with two parameters (t, BB1, BB6, BB7, BB8, Tawn type 1 and type 2; default: par2 = 0). par2 should be an positive integer for the Students's t

copula family = 2.

obj BiCop object containing the family and parameter specification.

check.pars logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are

omitted (should only be used with care).

#### **Details**

If the family and parameter specification is stored in a BiCop object obj, the alternative version

BiCopPar2TailDep(obj)

can be used.

# Value

lower tail dependence coefficient for the given bivariate copula family and

parameter(s) par, par2:

$$\lambda_L = \lim_{u \searrow 0} \frac{C(u, u)}{u}$$

upper Upper tail dependence coefficient for the given bivariate copula family

and parameter(s) par, par2:

$$\lambda_U = \lim_{u \nearrow 1} \frac{1 - 2u + C(u, u)}{1 - u}$$

Lower and upper tail dependence coefficients for bivariate copula families and parameters ( $\theta$  for one parameter families and the first parameter of the t-copula with  $\nu$  degrees of freedom,  $\theta$  and  $\delta$  for the two parameter BB1, BB6, BB7 and BB8 copulas) are given in the following table.

No.	Lower tail dependence	Upper tail dependence
1	-	-
2	$2t_{\nu+1} \left( -\sqrt{\nu+1} \sqrt{\frac{1-\theta}{1+\theta}} \right)$	$2t_{\nu+1} \left( -\sqrt{\nu+1} \sqrt{\frac{1-\theta}{1+\theta}} \right)$

BiCopPar2TailDep 67

```
2^{-1/\theta}
3
                                                             2 - 2^{1/\theta}
4
5
                                                             2 - 2^{1/\theta}
6
                 2^{-1/(\theta\delta)}
                                                             2-2^{1/\delta}
7
                                                             2-2^{1/(\theta\delta)}
8
                 2^{-1/\delta}
                                                             2 - 2^{1/\theta}
9
                                                             2-2^{1/\theta} if \delta=1 otherwise 0
10
13
                 2-2^{1/\theta}
14
                 2-2^{1/\theta}
16
                                                             2^{-1/(\theta\delta)}
                 2 - 2^{1/\delta}
17
                 2 - 2^{1/(\theta \delta)}
18
                 2-2^{1/\theta}
                                                             2^{-1/\delta}
19
20
                 2-2^{1/\theta} if \delta=1 otherwise 0
23, 33
24, 34 -
26, 36
27, 37
28, 38
29, 39
30, 40
                                                             \delta + 1 - (\delta^{\theta} + 1)^{1/\theta}
104,204
114, 214 1 + \delta - (\delta^{\theta} + 1)^{1/\theta}
124, 224 -
134, 234
```

# Note

The number n can be chosen arbitrarily, but must agree across arguments.

# Author(s)

Eike Brechmann

# References

Joe, H. (1997). Multivariate Models and Dependence Concepts. Chapman and Hall, London.

# See Also

BiCopPar2Tau

# **Examples**

```
## Example 1: Gaussian copula
BiCopPar2TailDep(1, 0.7)
BiCop(1, 0.7)$taildep # alternative
```

68 BiCopPar2Tau

```
## Example 2: Student-t copula
BiCopPar2TailDep(2, c(0.6, 0.7, 0.8), 4)
## Example 3: different copula families
BiCopPar2TailDep(c(3, 4, 6), 2)
```

BiCopPar2Tau

Kendall's Tau Value of a Bivariate Copula

# **Description**

This function computes the theoretical Kendall's tau value of a bivariate copula for given parameter values.

# Usage

```
BiCopPar2Tau(family, par, par2 = 0, obj = NULL, check.pars = TRUE)
```

# **Arguments**

family

integer; single number or vector of size m; defines the bivariate copula family:

0 = independence copula

1 = Gaussian copula

2 = Student t copula (t-copula)

3 = Clayton copula

4 = Gumbel copula

5 = Frank copula

6 = Joe copula

7 = BB1 copula

8 = BB6 copula

9 = BB7 copula

10 = BB8 copula

13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")

14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")

16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")

17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1")

18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6")

19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7")

20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8")

23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)

24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)

26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)

27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees)

28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees)

29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees)

30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees)

BiCopPar2Tau 69

33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)
34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)
36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)
37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees)
38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees)
39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees)
40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)
40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)
104 = Tawn type 1 copula
114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees)
124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees)
134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees)
204 = Tawn type 2 copula
214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees)
224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees)
234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)

par numeric; single number or vector of size n; copula parameter.

numeric; single number or vector of size n; second parameter for bivariate copulas with two parameters (t, BB1, BB6, BB7, BB8, Tawn type 1 and type 2; default: par2 = 0). Note that the degrees of freedom parameter of the t-copula does not need to be set, because the theoretical Kendall's tau value of the t-

copula is independent of this choice.

obj BiCop object containing the family and parameter specification.

check.pars logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are

omitted (should only be used with care).

# **Details**

If the family and parameter specification is stored in a BiCop object obj, the alternative version

```
BiCopPar2Tau(obj) can be used.
```

#### Value

Theoretical value of Kendall's tau (vector) corresponding to the bivariate copula family and parameter vector  $(\theta, \delta) = (par, par2)$ .

```
No. (family) Kendall's tau (tau)  \begin{array}{ll} 1, \ 2 & \frac{2}{\pi}\arcsin(\theta) \\ 3, \ 13 & \frac{\theta}{\theta+2} \\ 4, \ 14 & 1-\frac{1}{\theta} \\ 5 & 1-\frac{4}{\theta}+4\frac{D_1(\theta)}{\theta} \\ & \text{with } D_1(\theta)=\int_0^\theta \frac{x/\theta}{\exp(x)-1}dx \text{ (Debye function)} \\ 6, \ 16 & 1+\frac{4}{\theta^2}\int_0^1 x\log(x)(1-x)^{2(1-\theta)/\theta}dx \end{array}
```

70 BiCopPar2Tau

$$\begin{array}{lll} 7, & 17 & 1-\frac{2}{\delta(\theta+2)} \\ 8, & 18 & 1+4\int_{0}^{1}-\log(-(1-t)^{\theta}+1)(1-t-(1-t)^{-\theta}+(1-t)^{-\theta}t)/(\delta\theta)dt \\ 9, & 19 & 1+4\int_{0}^{1}((1-(1-t)^{\theta})^{-\delta}-1)/(-\theta\delta(1-t)^{\theta-1}(1-(1-t)^{\theta})^{-\delta-1})dt \\ 10, & 20 & 1+4\int_{0}^{1}-\log\left(((1-t\delta)^{\theta}-1)/((1-\delta)^{\theta}-1)\right) \\ & & *(1-t\delta-(1-t\delta)^{-\theta}+(1-t\delta)^{-\theta}t\delta)/(\theta\delta)dt \\ 23, & 33 & \frac{\theta}{2-\theta} \\ 24, & 34 & -1-\frac{1}{\theta} \\ 26, & 36 & -1-\frac{4}{\theta^2}\int_{0}^{1}x\log(x)(1-x)^{-2(1+\theta)/\theta}dx \\ 27, & 37 & -1-\frac{2}{\delta(2-\theta)} \\ 28, & 38 & -1-4\int_{0}^{1}-\log(-(1-t)^{-\theta}+1)(1-t-(1-t)^{\theta}+(1-t)^{\theta}t)/(\delta\theta)dt \\ 29, & 39 & -1-4\int_{0}^{1}((1-(1-t)^{-\theta})^{\delta}-1)/(-\theta\delta(1-t)^{-\theta-1}(1-(1-t)^{-\theta})^{\delta-1})dt \\ 30, & 40 & -1-4\int_{0}^{1}-\log\left(((1+t\delta)^{-\theta}-1)/((1+\delta)^{-\theta}-1)\right) \\ & *(1+t\delta-(1+t\delta)^{\theta}-(1+t\delta)^{\theta}t\delta)/(\theta\delta)dt \\ 104, & 114 & \int_{0}^{1}\frac{t(1-t)A''(t)}{A(t)}dt \\ & \text{with } A(t) = (1-\delta)t+[(\delta(1-t))^{\theta}+t^{\theta}]^{1/\theta} \\ 204, & 214 & \int_{0}^{1}\frac{t(1-t)A'''(t)}{A(t)}dt \\ & \text{with } A(t) = (1-\delta)(1-t)+[(1-t)^{-\theta}+(\delta t)^{-\theta}]^{-1/\theta} \\ 124, & 134 & -\int_{0}^{1}\frac{t(1-t)A'''(t)}{A(t)}dt \\ & \text{with } A(t) = (1-\delta)t+[(\delta(1-t))^{-\theta}+t^{-\theta}]^{-1/\theta} \\ 224, & 234 & -\int_{0}^{1}\frac{t(1-t)A'''(t)}{A(t)}dt \\ & \text{with } A(t) = (1-\delta)(1-t)+[(1-t)^{-\theta}+(\delta t)^{-\theta}]^{-1/\theta} \end{array}$$

# Note

The number n can be chosen arbitrarily, but must agree across arguments.

# Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier, Tobias Erhardt

#### References

Joe, H. (1997). Multivariate Models and Dependence Concepts. Chapman and Hall, London.

Czado, C., U. Schepsmeier, and A. Min (2012). Maximum likelihood estimation of mixed C-vines with application to exchange rates. Statistical Modelling, 12(3), 229-255.

#### See Also

```
BiCopTau2Par, BiCop
```

# Examples

```
## Example 1: Gaussian copula
tau0 <- 0.5
rho <- BiCopTau2Par(family = 1, tau = tau0)
# transform back</pre>
```

BiCopPDF 71

```
tau <- BiCopPar2Tau(family = 1, par = rho)
tau - 2/pi*asin(rho)

## Example 2:
vpar <- seq(from = 1.1, to = 10, length.out = 100)
tauC <- BiCopPar2Tau(family = 3, par = vpar)
tauG <- BiCopPar2Tau(family = 4, par = vpar)
tauF <- BiCopPar2Tau(family = 5, par = vpar)
tauJ <- BiCopPar2Tau(family = 6, par = vpar)
plot(tauC ~ vpar, type = "1", ylim = c(0,1))
lines(tauG ~ vpar, col = 2)
lines(tauF ~ vpar, col = 3)
lines(tauJ ~ vpar, col = 4)

## Example 3: different copula families
theta <- BiCopTau2Par(family = c(3,4,6), tau = c(0.4, 0.5, 0.6))
BiCopPar2Tau(family = c(3,4,6), par = theta)</pre>
```

BiCopPDF

Density of a Bivariate Copula

# **Description**

This function evaluates the probability density function (PDF) of a given parametric bivariate copula.

### **Usage**

```
BiCopPDF(u1, u2, family, par, par2 = 0, obj = NULL,
  check.pars = TRUE)
```

# **Arguments**

u1, u2 numeric vectors of equal length with values in [0,1].

family integer; single number or vector of size length(u1); defines the bivariate copula family:

0 = independence copula

1 = Gaussian copula

2 = Student t copula (t-copula)

3 = Clayton copula

4 = Gumbel copula

5 = Frank copula

6 = Joe copula

7 = BB1 copula

8 = BB6 copula

72 **BiCopPDF** 

```
9 = BB7 copula
10 = BB8 copula
13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")
14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")
16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")
17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1")
18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6")
19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7")
20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8")
23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)
24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)
26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)
27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees)
28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees)
29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees)
30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees)
33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)
34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)
36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)
37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees)
38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees)
39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees)
40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)
104 = \text{Tawn type } 1 \text{ copula}
114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees)
124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees)
134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees)
204 = \text{Tawn type 2 copula}
214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees)
224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees)
234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)
numeric; single number or vector of size length(u1); copula parameter.
numeric; single number or vector of size length(u1); second parameter for
```

par

par2

bivariate copulas with two parameters (t, BB1, BB6, BB7, BB8, Tawn type 1 and type 2; default: par2 = 0). par2 should be an positive integer for the

Students's t copula family = 2.

obj BiCop object containing the family and parameter specification.

check.pars logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are

omitted (should only be used with care).

# **Details**

If the family and parameter specification is stored in a BiCop object obj, the alternative version

```
BiCopPDF(u1, u2, obj)
can be used.
```

# Value

A numeric vector of the bivariate copula density

- of the copula family
- with parameter(s) par, par2
- evaluated at u1 and u2.

## Author(s)

Eike Brechmann

#### See Also

```
BiCopCDF, BiCopHfunc, BiCopSim, BiCop
```

#### **Examples**

```
## simulate from a bivariate Student-t copula
cop <- BiCop(family = 2, par = -0.7, par2 = 4)
simdata <- BiCopSim(100, cop)

## evaluate the density of the bivariate t-copula
u1 <- simdata[,1]
u2 <- simdata[,2]
BiCopPDF(u1, u2, cop)

## select a bivariate copula for the simulated data
fit <- BiCopSelect(u1, u2)
summary(fit)
## and evaluate its PDF
round(BiCopPDF(u1, u2, fit), 3)</pre>
```

BiCopSelect

Selection and Maximum Likelihood Estimation of Bivariate Copula Families

## **Description**

This function selects an appropriate bivariate copula family for given bivariate copula data using one of a range of methods. The corresponding parameter estimates are obtained by maximum likelihood estimation.

# Usage

```
BiCopSelect(u1, u2, familyset = NA, selectioncrit = "AIC",
  indeptest = FALSE, level = 0.05, weights = NA, rotations = TRUE,
  se = FALSE, presel = TRUE, method = "mle")
```

## **Arguments**

u1, u2 Data vectors of equal length with values in [0,1].

familyset

Vector of bivariate copula families to select from. The vector has to include at least one bivariate copula family that allows for positive and one that allows for negative dependence. If familyset = NA (default), selection among all possible families is performed. If a vector of negative numbers is provided, selection among all but abs(familyset) families is performed. Coding of bivariate copula families:

- 0 = independence copula
- 1 = Gaussian copula
- 2 = Student t copula (t-copula)
- 3 = Clayton copula
- 4 = Gumbel copula
- 5 = Frank copula
- 6 = Joe copula
- 7 = BB1 copula
- 8 = BB6 copula
- 9 = BB7 copula
- 10 = BB8 copula
- 13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")
- 14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")
- 16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")
- 17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1")
- 18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6")
- 19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7")
- 20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8")
- 23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)
- 24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)
- 26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)
- 27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees)
- 28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees)
- 29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees)
- 30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees)
- 33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)
- 34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)
- 36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)
- 37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees)
- 38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees)
- 39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees)
- 40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)
- 104 = Tawn type 1 copula
- 114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees)
- 124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees)
- 134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees)
- 204 = Tawn type 2 copula
- 214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees)
- 224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees)
- 234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)

selectioncrit Character indicating the criterion for bivariate copula selection. Possible choices:

selectioncrit = "AIC" (default), "BIC", or "logLik".

indeptest Logical; whether a hypothesis test for the independence of u1 and u2 is per-

formed before bivariate copula selection (default: indeptest = FALSE; see BiCopIndTest). The independence copula is chosen if the null hypothesis of

independence cannot be rejected.

level Numeric; significance level of the independence test (default: level = 0.05).

weights Numerical; weights for each observation (optional).

rotations If TRUE, all rotations of the families in familyset are included (or subtracted).

se Logical; whether standard error(s) of parameter estimates is/are estimated (de-

fault: se = FALSE).

presel Logical; whether to exclude families before fitting based on symmetry properties

of the data. Makes the selection about 30 (on average), but may yield slightly

worse results in few special cases.

method indicates the estimation method: either maximum likelihood estimation (method = "mle";

default) or inversion of Kendall's tau (method = "itau"). For method = "itau" only one parameter families and the Student t copula can be used (family = 1,2,3,4,5,6,13,14,16,23,24,26,33,34 or 36). For the t-copula, par2 is found by a crude profile likelihood optimization over the interval (2, 10].

#### **Details**

Copulas can be selected according to the Akaike and Bayesian Information Criteria (AIC and BIC, respectively). First all available copulas are fitted using maximum likelihood estimation. Then the criteria are computed for all available copula families (e.g., if u1 and u2 are negatively dependent, Clayton, Gumbel, Joe, BB1, BB6, BB7 and BB8 and their survival copulas are not considered) and the family with the minimum value is chosen. For observations  $u_{i,j}$ , i=1,...,N, j=1,2, the AIC of a bivariate copula family c with parameter(s)  $\theta$  is defined as

$$AIC := -2\sum_{i=1}^{N} \ln[c(u_{i,1}, u_{i,2}|\boldsymbol{\theta})] + 2k,$$

where k=1 for one parameter copulas and k=2 for the two parameter t-, BB1, BB6, BB7 and BB8 copulas. Similarly, the BIC is given by

$$BIC := -2\sum_{i=1}^{N} \ln[c(u_{i,1}, u_{i,2}|\boldsymbol{\theta})] + \ln(N)k.$$

Evidently, if the BIC is chosen, the penalty for two parameter families is stronger than when using the AIC.

Additionally a test for independence can be performed beforehand.

#### Value

An object of class BiCop, augmented with the following entries:

se, se2 standard errors for the parameter estimates (if se = TRUE,

nobs number of observations,

logLik log likelihood

AIC Aikaike's Informaton Criterion,
BIC Bayesian's Informaton Criterion,
emptau empirical value of Kendall's tau,

p.value.indeptest

p-value of the independence test.

#### Note

For a comprehensive summary of the fitted model, use summary(object); to see all its contents, use str(object).

The parameters of the Student t and BB copulas are restricted (see defaults in BiCopEst to avoid being to close to their limiting cases.

#### Author(s)

Eike Brechmann, Jeffrey Dissmann, Thomas Nagler

#### References

Akaike, H. (1973). Information theory and an extension of the maximum likelihood principle. In B. N. Petrov and F. Csaki (Eds.), Proceedings of the Second International Symposium on Information Theory Budapest, Akademiai Kiado, pp. 267-281.

Brechmann, E. C. (2010). Truncated and simplified regular vines and their applications. Diploma thesis, Technische Universitaet Muenchen.

```
http://mediatum.ub.tum.de/?id=1079285.
```

Manner, H. (2007). Estimation and model selection of copulas with an application to exchange rates. METEOR research memorandum 07/056, Maastricht University.

Schwarz, G. E. (1978). Estimating the dimension of a model. Annals of Statistics 6 (2), 461-464.

# See Also

```
BiCop, BiCopEst, RVineStructureSelect, RVineCopSelect, BiCopIndTest,
```

```
## Example 1: Gaussian copula with large dependence parameter
par <- 0.7
fam <- 1
dat1 <- BiCopSim(500, fam, par)
# select the bivariate copula family and estimate the parameter(s)
cop1 <- BiCopSelect(dat1[, 1], dat1[, 2], familyset = 1:10,</pre>
```

**BiCopSim** 77

```
indeptest = FALSE, level = 0.05)
cop1 # short overview
summary(cop1) # comprehensive overview
str(cop1) # see all contents of the object
## Example 2: Gaussian copula with small dependence parameter
par <- 0.01
fam <- 1
dat2 <- BiCopSim(500, fam, par)</pre>
# select the bivariate copula family and estimate the parameter(s)
cop2 <- BiCopSelect(dat2[, 1], dat2[, 2], familyset = 0:10,</pre>
                     indeptest = TRUE, level = 0.05)
summary(cop2)
## Example 3: empirical data
data(daxreturns)
cop3 <- BiCopSelect(daxreturns[, 1], daxreturns[, 4], familyset = 0:10)</pre>
summary(cop3)
```

BiCopSim

Simulation from a Bivariate Copula

## **Description**

This function simulates from a given parametric bivariate copula.

## Usage

```
BiCopSim(N, family, par, par2 = 0, obj = NULL, check.pars = TRUE)
```

## **Arguments**

Ν

Number of bivariate observations simulated.

family

integer; single number or vector of size N; defines the bivariate copula family:

0 = independence copula

1 = Gaussian copula

2 = Student t copula (t-copula)

3 = Clayton copula

4 = Gumbel copula

5 = Frank copula

6 =Joe copula

7 = BB1 copula

8 = BB6 copula9 = BB7 copula

10 = BB8 copula

13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")

14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")

78 BiCopSim

```
16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")
17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1")
18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6")
19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7")
20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8")
23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)
24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)
26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)
27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees)
28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees)
29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees)
30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees)
33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)
34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)
36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)
37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees)
38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees)
39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees)
40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)
104 = \text{Tawn type } 1 \text{ copula}
114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees)
124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees)
134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees)
204 = \text{Tawn type 2 copula}
214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees)
224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees)
234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)
```

par numeric; single number or vector of size N; copula parameter.

par2 numeric; single number or vector of size N; second parameter for bivariate cop-

ulas with two parameters (t, BB1, BB6, BB7, BB8, Tawn type 1 and type 2; default: par2 = 0). par2 should be a positive integer for the Students's t copula

family = 2.

obj BiCop object containing the family and parameter specification.

check.pars logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are

omitted (should only be used with care).

# Details

If the family and parameter specification is stored in a BiCop object obj, the alternative version BiCopSim(N, obj)

#### Value

can be used.

An N x 2 matrix of data simulated from the bivariate copula with family and parameter(s) par, par2.

BiCopTau2Par 79

## Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier

#### See Also

```
BiCop, RVineSim
```

## **Examples**

```
# simulate from a bivariate t-copula
simdata <- BiCopSim(100, 2, -0.7, par2 = 4)

# or alternatively
obj <- BiCop(family = 2, par = -0.7, par2 = 4)
simdata2 <- BiCopSim(100, obj)</pre>
```

BiCopTau2Par

Parameter of a Bivariate Copula for a given Kendall's Tau Value

# **Description**

This function computes the parameter of a (one parameter) bivariate copula for a given value of Kendall's tau.

## Usage

```
BiCopTau2Par(family, tau, check.taus = TRUE)
```

# **Arguments**

family

integer; single number or vector of size n; defines the bivariate copula family:

0 = independence copula

1 = Gaussian copula

2 = Student t copula (Here only the first parameter can be computed)

3 = Clayton copula

4 = Gumbel copula

5 = Frank copula

6 =Joe copula

13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")

14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")

16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")

23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)

24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)

26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)

33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)

34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)

36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)

Note that (with exception of the t-copula) two parameter bivariate copula fami-

lies cannot be used.

numeric; single number or vector of size n; Kendall's tau value (vector with

elements in [-1,1]).

check.taus logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/tau-consistency are omitted

(should only be used with care).

## Value

Parameter (vector) corresponding to the bivariate copula family and the value(s) of Kendall's tau  $(\tau)$ .

No. (family)	Parameter (par)
1, 2	$\sin(\tau \frac{\pi}{2})$
3, 13	$2\frac{\tau}{1-\tau}$
4, 14	$\frac{2\frac{\tau}{1-\tau}}{\frac{1-\tau}{1-\tau}}$
5	no closed form expression (numerical inversion)
6, 16	no closed form expression (numerical inversion)
23, 33	$2rac{ au}{1+ au}$
24, 34	$-\frac{1}{1+\tau}$
26, 36	no closed form expression (numerical inversion)

#### Note

The number n can be chosen arbitrarily, but must agree across arguments.

## Author(s)

Jakob Stoeber, Eike Brechmann, Tobias Erhardt

## References

Joe, H. (1997). Multivariate Models and Dependence Concepts. Chapman and Hall, London.

Czado, C., U. Schepsmeier, and A. Min (2012). Maximum likelihood estimation of mixed C-vines with application to exchange rates. Statistical Modelling, 12(3), 229-255.

## See Also

```
BiCopPar2Tau
```

```
## Example 1: Gaussian copula
tau0 <- 0.5
rho <- BiCopTau2Par(family = 1, tau = tau0)
BiCop(1, tau = tau0)$par # alternative

## Example 2:
vtau <- seq(from = 0.1, to = 0.8, length.out = 100)</pre>
```

BiCopVuongClarke 81

```
thetaC <- BiCopTau2Par(family = 3, tau = vtau)
thetaG <- BiCopTau2Par(family = 4, tau = vtau)
thetaF <- BiCopTau2Par(family = 5, tau = vtau)
thetaJ <- BiCopTau2Par(family = 6, tau = vtau)
plot(thetaC ~ vtau, type = "1", ylim = range(thetaF))
lines(thetaG ~ vtau, col = 2)
lines(thetaF ~ vtau, col = 3)
lines(thetaJ ~ vtau, col = 4)

## Example 3: different copula families
theta <- BiCopTau2Par(family = c(3,4,6), tau = c(0.4, 0.5, 0.6))
BiCopPar2Tau(family = c(3,4,6), par = theta)</pre>
```

BiCopVuongClarke

Scoring Goodness-of-Fit Test based on Vuong And Clarke Tests for Bivariate Copula Data

## **Description**

Based on the Vuong and Clarke tests this function computes a goodness-of-fit score for each bivariate copula family under consideration. For each possible pair of copula families the Vuong and the Clarke tests decides which of the two families fits the given data best and assigns a score—pro or contra a copula family—according to this decision.

# Usage

```
BiCopVuongClarke(u1, u2, familyset = NA, correction = FALSE,
  level = 0.05, rotations = TRUE)
```

#### **Arguments**

u1, u2 Data vectors of equal length with values in [0,1].

familyset

An integer vector of bivariate copula families under consideration, i.e., which are compared in the goodness-of-fit test. If familyset = NA (default), all possible families are compared. Possible families are:

0 = independence copula

1 = Gaussian copula

2 = Student t copula (t-copula)

3 = Clayton copula

4 = Gumbel copula

5 = Frank copula

6 = Joe copula

7 = BB1 copula

8 = BB6 copula

9 = BB7 copula

82 BiCopVuongClarke

```
10 = BB8 copula
13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")
14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")
16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")
17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1")
18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6")
19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7")
20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8")
23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)
24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)
26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)
27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees)
28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees)
29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees)
30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees)
33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)
34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)
36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)
37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees)
38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees)
39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees)
40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)
104 = Tawn type 1 copula
114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees)
124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees)
134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees)
204 = \text{Tawn type } 2 \text{ copula}
214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees)
224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees)
234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)
Correction for the number of parameters. Possible choices: correction = FALSE
(no correction; default), "Akaike" and "Schwarz".
```

# Details

correction

rotations

level

The Vuong as well as the Clarke test compare two models against each other and based on their null hypothesis, allow for a statistically significant decision among the two models (see the documentations of RVineVuongTest and RVineClarkeTest for descriptions of the two tests). In the goodness-of-fit test proposed by Belgorodski (2010) this is used for bivariate copula selection. It compares a model 0 to all other possible models under consideration. If model 0 is favored over another model, a score of "+1" is assigned and similarly a score of "-1" if the other model is determined to be superior. No score is assigned, if the respective test cannot discriminate between two models. Both tests can be corrected for the numbers of parameters used in the copulas. Either no correction (correction = FALSE), the Akaike correction (correction = "Akaike") or the parsimonious Schwarz correction (correction = "Schwarz") can be used.

Numerical; significance level of the tests (default: level = 0.05).

If TRUE, all rotations of the families in familyset are included (or subtracted).

BiCopVuongClarke 83

The models compared here are bivariate parametric copulas and we would like to determine which family fits the data better than the other families. E.g., if we would like to test the hypothesis that the bivariate Gaussian copula fits the data best, then we compare the Gaussian copula against all other copulas under consideration. In doing so, we investigate the null hypothesis "The Gaussian copula fits the data better than all other copulas under consideration", which corresponds to k-1 times the hypothesis "The Gaussian copula  $C_j$  fits the data better than copula  $C_i$ " for all  $i=1,...,k, i\neq j$ , where k is the number of bivariate copula families under consideration (length of familyset). This procedure is done not only for one family but for all families under consideration, i.e., two scores, one based on the Vuong and one based on the Clarke test, are returned for each bivariate copula family. If used as a goodness-of-fit procedure, the family with the highest score should be selected.

For more and detailed information about the goodness-of-fit test see Belgorodski (2010).

#### Value

A matrix with Vuong test scores in the first and Clarke test scores in the second row. Column names correspond to bivariate copula families (see above).

#### Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier, Eike Brechmann, Natalia Belgorodski

#### References

Belgorodski, N. (2010) Selecting pair-copula families for regular vines with application to the multivariate analysis of European stock market indices Diploma thesis, Technische Universitaet Muenchen. http://mediatum.ub.tum.de/?id=1079284.

Clarke, K. A. (2007). A Simple Distribution-Free Test for Nonnested Model Selection. Political Analysis, 15, 347-363.

Vuong, Q. H. (1989). Ratio tests for model selection and non-nested hypotheses. Econometrica 57 (2), 307-333.

# See Also

```
BiCopGofTest, RVineVuongTest, RVineClarkeTest, BiCopSelect
```

```
# simulate from a t-copula
dat <- BiCopSim(500, 2, 0.7, 5)

# apply the test for families 1-6
BiCopVuongClarke(dat[,1], dat[,2], familyset = 1:6)</pre>
```

84 C2RVine

C2RVine

Transform C-Vine to R-Vine Structure

# **Description**

This function transforms a C-vine structure from the package CDVine to the corresponding R-vine structure.

#### Usage

```
C2RVine(order, family, par, par2 = rep(0, length(family)))
```

#### **Arguments**

order

A d-dimensional vector specifying the order of the root nodes in the C-vine.

family

A d\*(d-1)/2 vector of pair-copula families with values

0 = independence copula

1 = Gaussian copula

2 = Student t copula (t-copula)

3 = Clayton copula

4 = Gumbel copula

5 = Frank copula

6 = Joe copula

7 = BB1 copula

8 = BB6 copula

9 = BB7 copula

10 = BB8 copula

13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")

14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")

16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")

17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1")

18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6")

19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7")

20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8")

23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)

24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)

26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)

27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees)

28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees)

29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees)

30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees)

33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)

34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)

36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)

37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees)

38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees)

39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees)

C2RVine 85

```
40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)

104 = Tawn type 1 copula

114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees)

124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees)

134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees)

204 = Tawn type 2 copula

214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees)

224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees)

234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)

A d*(d-1)/2 vector of pair-copula parameters.

A d*(d-1)/2 vector of second pair-copula parameters (optional; default:

par2 = rep(0,length(family))), necessary for the t-, BB1, BB6, BB7, BB8,

Tawn type 1 and type 2 copulas.
```

#### Value

An RVineMatrix object.

#### Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier, Eike Brechmann

## See Also

RVineMatrix, D2RVine

```
# set up C-vine copula model with mixed pair-copulas
d <- 4
dd <- d*(d-1)/2
order <- 1:d
family <-c(1, 2, 3, 4, 7, 3)
par <- c(0.5, 0.4, 2, 1.5, 1.2, 1.5)
par2 <- c(0, 5, 0, 0, 2, 0)
# transform to R-vine matrix notation
RVM <- C2RVine(order, family, par, par2)
# load package CDVine for comparison
library(CDVine)
# simulate a sample of size 500 from a 4-dimensional D-vine
type <- 1 # C-vine
simdata <- CDVineSim(500, family, par, par2, type)</pre>
# determine log-likelihood
out <- CDVineLogLik(simdata, family, par, par2, type)</pre>
out$loglik
```

86 contour.RVineMatrix

```
# check that log-likelihood stays the same
out2 <- RVineLogLik(simdata, RVM)
out2$loglik</pre>
```

```
contour.RVineMatrix Plotting RVineMatrix objects.
```

# **Description**

There are two plotting generics for RVineMatrix objects. plot.RVineMatrix plots one or all trees of a given R-vine copula model. Edges can be labeled with information about the corresponding pair-copula. contour.RVineMatrix produces a matrix of contour plots (using plot.BiCop).

## Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'RVineMatrix'
contour(x, tree = "ALL", xylim = NULL,
    cex.nums = 1, data = NULL, ...)

## S3 method for class 'RVineMatrix'
plot(x, tree = "ALL", type = 0,
    edge.labels = NULL, legend.pos = "bottomleft", interactive = FALSE,
    ...)
```

# **Arguments**

Х	RVineMatrix object.
tree	"ALL" or integer vector; specifies which trees are plotted.
xylim	numeric vector of length 2; sets xlim and ylim for the contours
cex.nums	numeric; expansion factor for font of the numbers.
data	a data matrix for creating kernel density contours of each pair.
	Arguments passed to plot.network or plot.BiCop respectively.
type	integer; specifies how to make use of variable names:  0 = variable names are ignored,  1 = variable names are used to annotate vertices,  2 = uses numbers in plot and adds a legend for variable names.
edge.labels	character; either a vector of edge labels or one of the following:  "family" = pair-copula family abbreviation (see BiCopName),  "par" = pair-copula parameters,  "tau" = pair-copula Kendall's tau (by conversion of parameters)  "family-par" = pair-copula family and parameters  "family-tau" = pair-copula family and Kendall's tau.
legend.pos	the x argument for legend.
interactive	logical; if TRUE, the user is asked to adjust the positioning of vertices with his mouse.

## **Details**

If you want the contour boxes to be perfect squares, the plot height should be 1.25/length(tree)\*(d - min(tree)) times the plot width.

# Author(s)

Thomas Nagler, Nicole Barthel

#### See Also

```
RVineMatrix, plot.network, plot.BiCop, BiCopName, legend
```

# **Examples**

copulaFromFamilyIndex Construction of a Copula Object from a VineCopula Family Index

# **Description**

A VineCopula family index along with its parameters is used to construct a corresponding copula object.

#### Usage

```
copulaFromFamilyIndex(family, par, par2 = 0)
```

## **Arguments**

```
family a family index as defined in VineCopula-package
par its first parameter value
par2 if present, its second parameter
```

88 D2RVine

## Value

An object inherting copula corresponding to the specific family.

## Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

# **Examples**

```
# normalCopula with parameter 0.5
copulaFromFamilyIndex(1, 0.5)

# rotated Tawn T2 copula with parameters
copulaFromFamilyIndex(224, -2, 0.5)
```

D2RVine

Transform D-Vine to R-Vine Structure

# **Description**

This function transforms a D-vine structure from the package CDVine to the corresponding R-vine structure.

# Usage

```
D2RVine(order, family, par, par2 = rep(0, length(family)))
```

# **Arguments**

order

A d-dimensional vector specifying the order of the nodes in the D-vine.

family

A d\*(d-1)/2 vector of pair-copula families with values

0 = independence copula

1 = Gaussian copula

2 = Student t copula (t-copula)

3 = Clayton copula

4 = Gumbel copula

5 = Frank copula

6 = Joe copula

7 = BB1 copula

8 = BB6 copula

o = bbo copui

9 = BB7 copula

10 = BB8 copula

13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")

14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")

16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")

D2RVine 89

```
17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1")
                       18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6")
                       19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7")
                       20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8")
                       23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)
                       24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)
                       26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)
                       27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees)
                       28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees)
                       29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees)
                       30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees)
                       33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)
                       34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)
                       36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)
                       37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees)
                       38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees)
                       39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees)
                       40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees)
                       104 = \text{Tawn type } 1 \text{ copula}
                       114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees)
                       124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees)
                       134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees)
                       204 = \text{Tawn type 2 copula}
                       214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees)
                       224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees)
                       234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees)
                       A d*(d-1)/2 vector of pair-copula parameters.
    par
                       A d*(d-1)/2 vector of second pair-copula parameters (optional; default:
    par2
                       par2 = rep(0,length(family))), necessary for the t-, BB1, BB6, BB7, BB8,
                       Tawn type 1 and type 2 copulas.
Value
    An RVineMatrix object.
Author(s)
    Ulf Schepsmeier
See Also
    RVineMatrix, C2RVine
```

```
# set up D-vine copula model with mixed pair-copulas d <- 4 dd <- d*(d-1)/2
```

90 daxreturns

```
order <- 1:d
family <-c(1, 2, 3, 4, 7, 3)
par <- c(0.5, 0.4, 2, 1.5, 1.2, 1.5)
par2 <- c(0, 5, 0, 0, 2, 0)
# transform to R-vine matrix notation
RVM <- D2RVine(order, family, par, par2)</pre>
# load package CDVine for comparison
library(CDVine)
# simulate a sample of size 500 from a 4-dimensional D-vine
type <- 2 # D-vine
simdata <- CDVineSim(500, family, par, par2, type)</pre>
# determine log-likelihood
out <- CDVineLogLik(simdata, family, par, par2, type)</pre>
out$loglik
# check that log-likelihood stays the same
out2 <- RVineLogLik(simdata, RVM)</pre>
out2$loglik
```

daxreturns

Major German Stocks

# **Description**

This data set contains transformed standardized residuals of daily log returns of 15 major German stocks represented in the index DAX observed from January 2005 to August 2009. Each time series is filtered using a GARCH(1,1) model with Student t innovations.

#### **Format**

A data frame with 1158 observations on 15 variables. Column names correspond to ticker symbols of the stocks.

#### **Source**

Yahoo! Finance

#### See Also

RVineStructureSelect

ddCopula 91

## **Examples**

```
# load the data set
data(daxreturns)
# compute the empirical Kendall's tau matrix
TauMatrix(daxreturns)
```

ddCopula

Partial Derivatives of Copulas

# Description

Similar to dCopula and pCopula the function dduCopula evaluates the partial derivative  $\frac{\partial}{\partial u}C(u,v)$  and the function ddvCopula evaluates the partial derivative  $\frac{\partial}{\partial v}C(u,v)$  of the provided copula.

## **Arguments**

u Pairs of values for which the partial derivative should be evaluated.
copula The copula object representing the family member of interest.
... additional arguments can be passed on to the underlying functions.

#### Value

A vector of the evaluated partial derivatives of the same length as rows in u.

# Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

```
library(copula)

BB1Cop <- BB1Copula()
BB1CopSmpl <- rCopula(100, BB1Cop)

# conditional probabilities of a Gaussian copula given u
BB1GivenU <- dduCopula(BB1CopSmpl, BB1Cop)

# vs. conditional probabilities of a Gaussian copula given v
BB1GivenV <- ddvCopula(BB1CopSmpl[,c(2,1)], BB1Cop)

plot(BB1GivenU, BB1GivenV)
abline(0,1)</pre>
```

92 joeBiCopula

joeBiCopula

Constructor of the Joe Family and Rotated Versions thereof

# Description

Constructs an object of the (survival surJoeBiCopula, 90 degree rotated r90JoeBiCopula and 270 degree rotated r270JoeBiCopula) family for a given parameter. Note that package copula-package provides a class joeCopula as well.

# Usage

```
joeBiCopula(param = 2)
```

## **Arguments**

param

The parameter param defines the copula through theta.

## Value

One of the respective Joe copula classes (joeBiCopula, surJoeBiCopula, r90JoeBiCopula, r270JoeBiCopula).

## Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

#### References

Joe, H., (1997). Multivariate Models and Dependence Concepts. Monogra. Stat. Appl. Probab. 73, London: Chapman and Hall.

## See Also

See also BB1Copula, BB6Copula, BB7Copula and BB8Copula for further wrapper functions to the VineCopula-package.

```
library(copula)
persp(surJoeBiCopula(1.5), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10))
persp(r90JoeBiCopula(-1.5), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10))
persp(r270JoeBiCopula(-1.5), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10))
```

joeBiCopula-class 93

joeBiCopula-class	Classes "joeBiCopula", "surJoeBiCopula", "r90JoeBiCopula" and "r270JoeBiCopula"

## **Description**

Wrapper classes representing the bivariate Joe, survival Joe, 90 degree and 270 degree rotated Joe copula families (Joe 1997) from VineCopula-package. Note that package copula-package provides a class joeCopula as well.

## **Objects from the Classes**

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("joeBiCopula", ...), new("surJoeBiCopula", ...), new("r90JoeBiCopula", ...) and new("r270JoeBiCopula", ...) or by the functions joeBiCopula, surJoeBiCopula, r90JoeBiCopula and r270JoeBiCopula.

## Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

#### References

Joe, H., (1997). Multivariate Models and Dependence Concepts. Monogra. Stat. Appl. Probab. 73, London: Chapman and Hall.

## See Also

See also BB1Copula, BB6Copula, BB7Copula and BB8Copula for further wrapper classes to the VineCopula-package.

## **Examples**

```
showClass("surJoeBiCopula")
```

pairs.copuladata Pairs Plot of Copula Data

# **Description**

This function provides pair plots for copula data. Using default setting it plots bivariate contour plots on the lower panel, scatter plots and correlations on the upper panel and histograms on the diagonal panel.

94 pairs.copuladata

## Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'copuladata'
pairs(x, labels = names(x), ...,
  lower.panel = lp.copuladata, upper.panel = up.copuladata,
  diag.panel = dp.copuladata, label.pos = 0.85, cex.labels = 1,
  gap = 0, method = "kendall", ccols = terrain.colors(11),
  margins = "norm")
```

# **Arguments**

X	copuladata object.
labels	variable names/labels.
	other graphical parameters (see par) or options passed to BiCopKDE.
lower.panel	panel function to be used on the lower diagonal panels (if not supplied, a default function is used)
upper.panel	panel function to be used on the upper diagonal panels (if not supplied, a default function is used)
diag.panel	panel function to be used on the diagonal panels (if not supplied, a default function is used)
label.pos	y position of labels in the diagonal panel; default: label.pos = 0.85.
cex.labels	magnification to be used for the labels of the diagonal panel; default: cex.labels = 1.
gap	distance between subplots, in margin lines; default: gap = 0.
method	a character string indicating which correlation coefficients are computed. One of "pearson", "kendall" (default), or "spearman"
ccols	color to be used for the contour plots; default: ccols = terrain.colors(30).
margins	character; margins for the contour plots. Options are: "unif" for the original copula density, "norm" for the transformed density with standard normal margins, "exp" with standard exponential margins, and "flexp" with flipped exponential margins.

## Note

If the default panel functions are used

- col changes only the color of the points in the scatter plot (upper.panel)
- cex changes only the magnification of the points in the scatter plot (upper.panel)

# Author(s)

Tobias Erhardt

## See Also

```
\verb"pairs, as.copuladata, BiCopKDE"
```

pairs.copuladata 95

```
data(daxreturns)
data <- as.copuladata(daxreturns)</pre>
sel <- c(4,5,14,15)
## pairs plot with default settings
pairs(data[sel])
## pairs plot with custom settings
nlevels <- 20
pairs(data[sel], cex = 2, pch = 1, col = "black",
      diag.panel = NULL, label.pos = 0.5,
      cex.labels = 2.5, gap = 1,
      method = "pearson", ccols = heat.colors(nlevels),
      margins = "flexp")
## pairs plot with own panel functions
up <- function(x, y) {</pre>
 # upper panel: empirical contour plot
 op <- par(usr = c(-3, 3, -3, 3), new = TRUE)
 BiCopKDE(x, y,
           levels = c(0.01, 0.05, 0.1, 0.15, 0.2),
           margins = "exp",
           axes = FALSE)
 on.exit(par(op))
}
lp <- function(x, y) {</pre>
 # lower panel: scatter plot (copula data) and correlation
 op <- par(usr = c(0, 1, 0, 1), new = TRUE)
 points(x, y, pch = 1, col = "black")
 r \leftarrow cor(x, y, method = "spearman") # Spearman's rho
 txt \leftarrow format(x = r, digits = 3, nsmall = 3)[1]
 text(x = 0.5, y = 0.5, labels = txt, cex = 1 + abs(r) * 2, col = "blue")
 on.exit(par(op))
}
dp <- function(x) {</pre>
 # diagonal panel: histograms (copula data)
 op <- par(usr = c(0, 1, 0, 1.5), new = TRUE)
 hist(x, freq = FALSE, add = TRUE, col = "brown", border = "black", main = "")
 abline(h = 1, col = "black", lty = 2)
 on.exit(par(op))
}
nlevels <- 20
pairs(data[sel],
      lower.panel = lp, upper.panel = up, diag.panel = dp, gap = 0.5)
```

96 plot.BiCop

plot.BiCop

Plotting tools for BiCop objects

# Description

There are several options for plotting BiCop objects. The density of a bivariate copula density can be visualized as surface/perspective or contour plot. Optionally, the density can be coupled with standard normal margins (default for contour plots). Furthermore, a lambda-plot is available (cf., BiCopLambda).

# Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'BiCop'
plot(x, type = "surface", margins, size, ...)
## S3 method for class 'BiCop'
contour(x, margins = "norm", size = 100L, ...)
```

# Arguments

X	BiCop object.
type	plot type; either "surface", "contour", or "lambda" (partial matching is activated); the latter is only implemented for a few families (c.f., BiCopLambda).
margins	only relevant for types "contour" and "surface"; options are: "unif" for the original copula density, "norm" for the transformed density with standard normal margins, "exp" with standard exponential margins, and "flexp" with flipped exponential margins. Default is "norm" for type = "contour", and "unif" for type = "surface".
size	integer; only relevant for types "contour" and "surface"; the plot is based on values on a $sizexsize$ grid; default is 100 for type = "contour", and 25 for type = "surface".
	optional arguments passed to contour or wireframe.

# Author(s)

Thomas Nagler

# See Also

BiCop, contour, wireframe

pobs 97

## **Examples**

```
## construct BiCop object for a Tawn copula
obj <- BiCop(family = 104, par = 2.5, par2 = 0.4)

## plots
plot(obj) # surface plot of copula density
contour(obj) # contour plot with standard normal margins
contour(obj, margins = "unif") # contour plot of copula density</pre>
```

pobs

Pseudo-Observations

## **Description**

Compute the pseudo-observations for the given data matrix.

## **Arguments**

```
x n \times d-matrix of random variates to be converted to pseudo-observations. na.last, ties.method are passed to rank; see there. lower.tail logical which, if FALSE, returns the pseudo-observations when applying the empirical marginal survival functions.
```

#### **Details**

Given n realizations  $x_i = (x_{i1}, \ldots, x_{id})^T$ ,  $i \in \{1, \ldots, n\}$  of a random vector X, the pseudo-observations are defined via  $u_{ij} = r_{ij}/(n+1)$  for  $i \in \{1, \ldots, n\}$  and  $j \in \{1, \ldots, d\}$ , where  $r_{ij}$  denotes the rank of  $x_{ij}$  among all  $x_{kj}$ ,  $k \in \{1, \ldots, n\}$ . The pseudo-observations can thus also be computed by component-wise applying the empirical distribution functions to the data and scaling the result by n/(n+1). This asymptotically negligible scaling factor is used to force the variates to fall inside the open unit hypercube, for example, to avoid problems with density evaluation at the boundaries. Note that pobs (, lower.tail=FALSE) simply returns 1-pobs ().

# Value

matrix of the same dimensions as x containing the pseudo-observations.

## Note

This function is borrowed from the copula package.

## Author(s)

Marius Hofert

98 RVineAIC

## **Examples**

```
## Simple definition of the function:
pobs

## simulate data from a multivariate normal distribution
library(mvtnorm)
set.seed(123)
Sigma <- matrix(c(2, 1, -0.2, 1, 1, 0.3, -0.2, 0.3, 0.5), 3, 3)
mu <- c(-3, 2, 1)
dat <- rmvnorm(500, sigma = Sigma)
pairs(dat) # plot observations

## compute pseudo-observations for copula inference
udat <- pobs(dat)
pairs(udat)
# estimate vine copula model
fit <- RVineStructureSelect(udat, familyset = c(1, 2))</pre>
```

RVineAIC

AIC and BIC of an R-Vine Copula Model

# **Description**

These functions calculate the Akaike and Bayesian Information criteria of a d-dimensional R-vine copula model for a given copula data set.

# Usage

```
RVineAIC(data, RVM, par = RVM$par, par2 = RVM$par2)
RVineBIC(data, RVM, par = RVM$par, par2 = RVM$par2)
```

## **Arguments**

data	An N x d data matrix (with uniform margins).
RVM	An RVineMatrix object including the structure and the pair-copula families and parameters.
par	A d x d matrix with the pair-copula parameters (optional; default: $par = RVM$par$ ).
par2	A d x d matrix with the second parameters of pair-copula families with two parameters (optional; default; par2 = RVM\$par2).

RVineAIC 99

## **Details**

If k denotes the number of parameters of an R-vine copula model with log-likelihood  $l_{RVine}$  and parameter set  $\theta$ , then the Akaike Information Criterion (AIC) by Akaike (1973) is defined as

$$AIC := -2l_{RVine}\left(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\boldsymbol{u}\right) + 2k,$$

for observations  $\boldsymbol{u} = (\boldsymbol{u}_1', ..., \boldsymbol{u}_N')'$ .

Similarly, the Bayesian Information Criterion (BIC) by Schwarz (1978) is given by

$$BIC := -2l_{RVine} (\boldsymbol{\theta}|\boldsymbol{u}) + \log(N)k.$$

#### Value

```
AIC, BIC The computed AIC or BIC value, respectively.

pair.AIC, pair.BIC

A d x d matrix of individual contributions to the AIC or BIC value for each pair-
```

A d x d matrix of individual contributions to the AIC or BIC value for each pair-copula, respectively. Note: AIC = sum(pair.AIC) and similarly BIC = sum(pair.BIC).

# Author(s)

Eike Brechmann

#### References

Akaike, H. (1973). Information theory and an extension of the maximum likelihood principle. In B. N. Petrov and F. Csaki (Eds.), Proceedings of the Second International Symposium on Information Theory Budapest, Akademiai Kiado, pp. 267-281.

Schwarz, G. E. (1978). Estimating the dimension of a model. Annals of Statistics 6 (2), 461-464.

## See Also

RVineLogLik, RVineVuongTest, RVineClarkeTest

100 RVineClarkeTest

```
family <- matrix(family, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par <- c(0, 0.2, 0.9, 1.5, 3.9,
         0, 0, 1.1, 1.6, 0.9,
         0, 0, 0, 1.9, 0.5,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 4.8,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
par <- matrix(par, 5, 5)</pre>
# define second R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par2 <- matrix(0, 5, 5)</pre>
# define RVineMatrix object
RVM <- RVineMatrix(Matrix = Matrix, family = family, par = par, par2 = par2,
                    names=c("V1", "V2", "V3", "V4", "V5"))
# simulate a sample of size 300 from the R-vine copula model
set.seed(123)
simdata <- RVineSim(300,RVM)</pre>
# compute AIC and BIC
RVineAIC(simdata, RVM)
RVineBIC(simdata, RVM)
```

RVineClarkeTest

Clarke Test Comparing Two R-Vine Copula Models

## **Description**

This function performs a Clarke test between two d-dimensional R-vine copula models as specified by their RVineMatrix objects.

## Usage

```
RVineClarkeTest(data, RVM1, RVM2)
```

#### **Arguments**

An N x d data matrix (with uniform margins).

RVM1, RVM2 RVineMatrix objects of models 1 and 2.

#### **Details**

The test proposed by Clarke (2007) allows to compare non-nested models. For this let  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  be two competing vine copulas in terms of their densities and with estimated parameter sets  $\hat{\theta}_1$  and  $\hat{\theta}_2$ . The null hypothesis of statistical indistinguishability of the two models is

RVineClarkeTest 101

$$H_0: P(m_i > 0) = 0.5 \ \forall i = 1, ..., N,$$

where  $m_i := \log\left[\frac{c_1(m{u}_i|\hat{m{ heta}}_1)}{c_2(m{u}_i|\hat{m{ heta}}_2)}\right]$  for observations  $m{u}_i,\ i=1,...,N.$ 

Since under statistical equivalence of the two models the log likelihood ratios of the single observations are uniformly distributed around zero and in expectation 50% of the log likelihood ratios greater than zero, the test statistic

$$\mathtt{statistic} := B = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \mathbf{1}_{(0,\infty)}(m_i),$$

where 1 is the indicator function, is distributed Binomial with parameters N and p=0.5, and critical values can easily be obtained. Model 1 is interpreted as statistically equivalent to model 2 if B is not significantly different from the expected value  $Np=\frac{N}{2}$ .

Like AIC and BIC, the Clarke test statistic may be corrected for the number of parameters used in the models. There are two possible corrections; the Akaike and the Schwarz corrections, which correspond to the penalty terms in the AIC and the BIC, respectively.

#### Value

statistic, statistic.Akaike, statistic.Schwarz

Test statistics without correction, with Akaike correction and with Schwarz correction.

p.value, p.value.Akaike, p.value.Schwarz

P-values of tests without correction, with Akaike correction and with Schwarz correction.

## Author(s)

Jeffrey Dissmann, Eike Brechmann

#### References

Clarke, K. A. (2007). A Simple Distribution-Free Test for Nonnested Model Selection. Political Analysis, 15, 347-363.

#### See Also

RVineVuongTest, RVineAIC, RVineBIC

# **Examples**

```
# vine structure selection time-consuming (~ 20 sec)
```

# load data set
data(daxreturns)

# select the R-vine structure, families and parameters

102 RVineCopSelect

```
RVM <- RVineStructureSelect(daxreturns[,1:5], c(1:6))
RVM$Matrix
RVM$par
RVM$par2

# select the C-vine structure, families and parameters
CVM <- RVineStructureSelect(daxreturns[,1:5], c(1:6), type = "CVine")
CVM$Matrix
CVM$par
CVM$par
CVM$par2

# compare the two models based on the data
clarke <- RVineClarkeTest(daxreturns[,1:5], RVM, CVM)
clarke$statistic
clarke$statistic.Schwarz
clarke$p.value
clarke$p.value.Schwarz</pre>
```

RVineCopSelect

Sequential Pair-Copula Selection and Estimation for R-Vine Copula Models

# Description

This function fits a R-vine copula model to a d-dimensional copula data set. Pair-copula families are selected using BiCopSelect and estimated sequentially.

## Usage

```
RVineCopSelect(data, familyset = NA, Matrix, selectioncrit = "AIC",
  indeptest = FALSE, level = 0.05, trunclevel = NA, se = FALSE,
  rotations = TRUE, method = "mle", cores = 1)
```

## **Arguments**

data N x d data matrix (with uniform margins).

familyset integer vector of pair-copula families to select from. The vector has to include

at least one pair-copula family that allows for positive and one that allows for negative dependence. Not listed copula families might be included to better handle limit cases. If familyset = NA (default), selection among all possible families is performed. If a vector of negative numbers is provided, selection among all but abs(familyset) is performed. Coding of pair copula families is

the same as in BiCop.

Matrix lower or upper triangular d x d matrix that defines the R-vine tree structure.

selectioncrit Character indicating the criterion for pair-copula selection. Possible choices:

selectioncrit = "AIC" (default), "BIC", or "logLik" (see BiCopSelect).

RVineCopSelect 103

indeptest Logical; whether a hypothesis test for the independence of u1 and u2 is per-

formed before bivariate copula selection (default: indeptest = FALSE; see BiCopIndTest). The independence copula is chosen for a (conditional) pair if

the null hypothesis of independence cannot be rejected.

level numeric; significance level of the independence test (default: level = 0.05).

trunclevel integer; level of truncation.

se Logical; whether standard errors are estimated (default: se = FALSE).
rotations logical; if TRUE, all rotations of the families in familyset are included.

method indicates the estimation method: either maximum likelihood estimation (method = "mle";

default) or inversion of Kendall's tau (method = "itau"). For method = "itau" only one parameter families and the Student t copula can be used (family = 1,2,3,4,5,6,13,14,16,23,24,26,33,34 or 36). For the t-copula, par2 is found by a crude profile likelihood optimization over the interval (2, 10].

cores integer; if cores > 1, estimation will be parallelized within each tree (us-

ing foreach). Note that parallelization causes substantial overhead and may be slower than single-threaded computation when dimension, sample size, or

family set are small or method = "itau".

## **Details**

R-vine copula models with unknown structure can be specified using RVineStructureSelect.

#### Value

An RVineMatrix object with the selected families (RVM\$family) as well as sequentially estimated parameters stored in RVM\$par and RVM\$par2. The object is augmented by the following information about the fit:

se, se2 standard errors for the parameter estimates (if se = TRUE; note that these are

only approximate since they do not account for the sequential nature of the esti-

mation.

nobs number of observations,

logLik, pair.logLik

log likelihood (overall and pairwise)

AIC, pair.AIC Aikaike's Informaton Criterion (overall and pairwise),

BIC, pair.BIC Bayesian's Informaton Criterion (overall and pairwise),

emptau matrix of empirical values of Kendall's tau,

p.value.indeptest

matrix of p-values of the independence test.

#'

#### Note

For a comprehensive summary of the vine copula model, use summary(object); to see all its contents, use str(object).

104 RVineCopSelect

#### Author(s)

Eike Brechmann, Thomas Nagler

#### References

Brechmann, E. C., C. Czado, and K. Aas (2012). Truncated regular vines in high dimensions with applications to financial data. Canadian Journal of Statistics 40 (1), 68-85.

Dissmann, J. F., E. C. Brechmann, C. Czado, and D. Kurowicka (2013). Selecting and estimating regular vine copulae and application to financial returns. Computational Statistics & Data Analysis, 59 (1), 52-69.

#### See Also

RVineMatrix, BiCop, BiCopSelect, plot.RVineMatrix, contour.RVineMatrix, foreach

```
# define 5-dimensional R-vine tree structure matrix
Matrix <- c(5, 2, 3, 1, 4,
            0, 2, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 1)
Matrix <- matrix(Matrix, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula family matrix
family <-c(0, 1, 3, 4, 4,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 3,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
family <- matrix(family, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par <- c(0, 0.2, 0.9, 1.5, 3.9,
         0, 0, 1.1, 1.6, 0.9,
         0, 0, 0, 1.9, 0.5,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 4.8,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
par <- matrix(par, 5, 5)</pre>
# define second R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par2 \leftarrow matrix(0, 5, 5)
## define RVineMatrix object
RVM <- RVineMatrix(Matrix = Matrix, family = family,
                    par = par, par2 = par2,
                    names = c("V1", "V2", "V3", "V4", "V5"))
## simulate a sample of size 500 from the R-vine copula model
set.seed(123)
simdata <- RVineSim(500, RVM)</pre>
```

RVineCor2pcor

```
## determine the pair-copula families and parameters
RVM1 <- RVineCopSelect(simdata, familyset = c(1, 3, 4, 5,6), Matrix)
## see the object's content or a summary
str(RVM1)
summary(RVM1)
## inspect the fitted model using plots
## Not run: plot(RVM1) # tree structure
contour(RVM1) # contour plots of all pair-copulas</pre>
```

RVineCor2pcor

(Partial) Correlations for R-Vine Copula Models

## **Description**

Correlations to partial correlations and vice versa for R-vines with independence, Gaussian and t-copulas.

# Usage

```
RVineCor2pcor(RVM, corMat)
RVinePcor2cor(RVM)
```

## **Arguments**

RVM RVineMatrix defining only the R-vine structure for Cor2pcor and providing as

well the partial correlations for Pcor2cor.

corMat correlation matrix

# Value

RVM RVineMatrix with transformed partial correlations (for Cor2pcor)

cor correlation matrix (for Pcor2cor)

#### Note

The behavior of RVinePcor2ccor differs from older versions (<= 1.4). The RVM object is now normalized such that the order of the returned correlation matrix conforms with the correlation matrix of the data. If RVM\$names are non-default, the initial ordering of the variables cannot be traced back and the matrix has to be interpreted as indicated by the row- and column names.

106 RVineGofTest

## **Examples**

```
## create RVineMatrix-object for Gaussian vine
Matrix <- matrix(c(1, 3, 4, 2,</pre>
                   0, 3, 4, 2,
                   0, 0, 4, 2,
                   0, 0, 0, 2), 4, 4)
family \leftarrow matrix(c(0, 1, 1, 1,
                   0, 0, 1, 1,
                   0, 0, 0, 1,
                   0, 0, 0, 0), 4, 4)
par <- matrix(c(0, 0.2, 0.6,
                    0, 0.2, 0.6,
                0,
                0, 0, 0.6,
                    0, 0, 0), 4, 4)
                0.
RVM <- RVineMatrix(Matrix, family, par)</pre>
## calculate correlation matrix corresponding to the R-Vine model
newcor <- RVinePcor2cor(RVM)</pre>
## transform back to partial correlations
RVineCor2pcor(RVM, newcor)$par
## check if they are equal
all.equal(RVM$par, RVineCor2pcor(RVM, newcor)$par)
```

RVineGofTest

Goodness-of-Fit Tests for R-Vine Copula Models

# Description

This function performs a goodness-of-fit test for R-vine copula models. There are 15 different goodness-of-fit tests implemented, described in Schepsmeier (2013).

#### Usage

```
RVineGofTest(data, RVM, method = "White", statistic = "CvM", B = 200,
  alpha = 2)
```

# **Arguments**

data An N x d data matrix (with uniform margins).

RVM RVineMatrix objects of the R-vine model under the null hypothesis.

Only the following copula families are allowed in RVM\$family due to restrictions in RVineGrad and RVineHessian

 $\emptyset$  = independence copula

1 = Gaussian copula

**RVineGofTest** 107

2 = Student t copula (t-copula) 3 = Clayton copula 4 = Gumbel copula 5 = Frank copula 6 = Joe copula13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton") 14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel") 16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe") 23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees) 24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees) 26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees) 33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees) 34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees) 36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees) method A string indicating the goodness-of-fit method: "White" = goodness-of-fit test based on White's information matrix equality (default) "IR" = goodness-of-fit test based on the information ratio "Breymann" = goodness-of-fit test based on the probability integral transform (PIT) and the aggregation to univariate data by Breymann et al. (2003). "Berg" = goodness-of-fit test based on the probability integral transform (PIT) and the aggregation to univariate data by Berg and Bakken (2007). "Berg2" = second goodness-of-fit test based on the probability integral transform (PIT) and the aggregation to univariate data by Berg and Bakken (2007). "ECP" = goodness-of-fit test based on the empirical copula process (ECP) "ECP2" = goodness-of-fit test based on the combination of probability integral transform (PIT) and empirical copula process (ECP) (Genest et al. 2009) A string indicating the goodness-of-fit test statistic type: statistic "CvM" = Cramer-von Mises test statistic (univariate for "Breymann", "Berg" and "Berg2", multivariate for "ECP" and "ECP2") "KS" = Kolmogorov-Smirnov test statistic (univariate for "Breymann", "Berg" and "Berg2", multivariate for "ECP" and "ECP2") "AD" = Anderson-Darling test statistic (only univariate for "Breymann", "Berg" and "Berg2") an integer for the number of bootstrap steps (default B = 200) For B = 0 the asymptotic p-value is returned if available, otherwise only the test statistic is returned. WARNING: If B is chosen too large, computations will take very long.

#### **Details**

В

alpha

method = "White":

alpha = 2)

This goodness-of fit test uses the information matrix equality of White (1982) and was original investigated by Huang and Prokhorov (2011) for copulas.

an integer of the set 2,4,6,... for the "Berg2" goodness-of-fit test (default

Schepsmeier (2012) enhanced their approach to the vine copula case.

The main contribution is that under correct model specification the Fisher Information can be equivalently calculated as minus the expected Hessian matrix or as the expected outer product of the score function. The null hypothesis is

$$H_0: \boldsymbol{H}(\theta) + \boldsymbol{C}(\theta) = 0$$

against the alternative

$$H_1: \boldsymbol{H}(\theta) + \boldsymbol{C}(\theta) \neq 0,$$

where  $H(\theta)$  is the expected Hessian matrix and  $C(\theta)$  is the expected outer product of the score function.

For the calculation of the test statistic we use the consistent maximum likelihood estimator  $\hat{\theta}$  and the sample counter parts of  $H(\theta)$  and  $C(\theta)$ .

The correction of the Covariance-Matrix in the test statistic for the uncertainty in the margins is skipped. The implemented test assumes that there is no uncertainty in the margins. The correction can be found in Huang and Prokhorov (2011) for bivariate copulas and in Schepsmeier (2013) for vine copulas. It involves multi-dimensional integrals.

method = "IR":

As the White test the information matrix ratio test is based on the expected Hessian matrix  $H(\theta)$  and the expected outer product of the score function  $C(\theta)$ .

$$H_0: -\boldsymbol{H}(\theta)^{-1}\boldsymbol{C}(\theta) = I_n$$

against the alternative

$$H_1: -\boldsymbol{H}(\theta)^{-1}\boldsymbol{C}(\theta) \neq I_p.$$

The test statistic can then be calculated as

$$IR_n := tr(\Phi(\theta))/p$$

with  $\Phi(\theta) = -\mathbf{H}(\theta)^{-1}\mathbf{C}(\theta)$ , p is the number of parameters, i.e. the length of  $\theta$ , and tr(A) is the trace of the matrix A

For details see Schepsmeier (2013)

method = "Breymann", method = "Berg" and method = "Berg2":

These tests are based on the multivariate probability integral transform (PIT) applied in RVinePIT. The multivariate data  $y_i$  returned form the PIT are aggregated to univariate data by different aggregation functions  $\Gamma(\cdot)$  in the sum

$$s_t = \sum_{i=1}^{d} \Gamma(y_{it}), t = 1, ..., n$$

. In Breymann et al. (2003) the weight function is suggested as  $\Gamma(\cdot) = \Phi^{-1}(\cdot)^2$ , while in Berg and Bakken (2007) the weight function is either  $\Gamma(\cdot) = |\cdot -0.5|$  (method="Berg") or  $\Gamma(\cdot) = (\cdot -0.5)^{\alpha}$ ,  $\alpha = 2, 4, 6, ...$  (method="Berg2").

Furthermore, the "Berg" and "Berg2" test are based on the order statistics of the PIT returns. See Berg and Bakken (2007) or Schepsmeier (2013) for details.

RVineGofTest 109

method = "ECP" and method = "ECP2":

Both tests are test for  $H_0: C \in C_0$  against  $H_1: C \notin C_0$  where C denotes the (vine) copula distribution function and  $C_0$  is a class of parametric (vine) copulas with  $\Theta \subseteq \mathbb{R}^p$  being the parameter space of dimension p. They are based on the empirical copula process (ECP)

$$\hat{C}_n(u) - C_{\hat{\theta}_n}(u),$$

with  $u=(u_1,\ldots,u_d)\in[0,1]^d$  and  $\hat{C}_n(u)=\frac{1}{n+1}\sum_{t=1}^n\mathbf{1}_{\{U_{t1}\leq u_1,\ldots,U_{td}\leq u_d\}}$ . The ECP is utilized in a multivariate Cramer-von Mises (CvM) or multivariate Kolmogorov-Smirnov (KS) based test statistic. An extension of the ECP-test is the combination of the multivariate PIT approach with the ECP. The general idea is that the transformed data of a multivariate PIT should be "close" to the independence copula Genest et al. (2009). Thus a distance of CvM or KS type between them is considered. This approach is called ECP2. Again we refer to Schepsmeier (2013) for details.

#### Value

For method = "White":

White test statistic

p.value p-value, either asymptotic for  $B = \emptyset$  or bootstrapped for  $B > \emptyset$ 

For method = "IR":

IR test statistic (raw version as stated above)

p. value So far no p-value is returned nigher a asymptotic nor a bootstrapped one. How to

calculated a bootstrapped p-value is explained in Schepsmeier (2013). Be aware, that the test statistics than have to be adjusted with the empirical variance.

For method = "Breymann", method = "Berg" and method = "Berg2":

CvM, KS, AD test statistic according to the choice of statistic

p.value p-value, either asymptotic for B = 0 or bootstrapped for B > 0. A asymptotic

p-value is only available for the Anderson-Darling test statistic if the R-package

ADGofTest is loaded.

Furthermore, a asymptotic p-value can be calculated for the Kolmogorov-Smirnov test statistic. For the Cramer-von Mises no asymptotic p-value is available so far.

For method = "ECP" and method = "ECP2":

CvM, KS test statistic according to the choice of statistic

p.value bootstrapped p-value

Warning: The code for all the p-values are not yet approved since some of them are moved from R-code to C-code. If you need p-values the best way is to write your own algorithm as suggested in Schepsmeier (2013) to get bootstrapped p-values.

#### Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier

RVineGrad

## References

Berg, D. and H. Bakken (2007) A copula goodness-of-fit approach based on the conditional probability integral transformation. http://www.danielberg.no/publications/Btest.pdf

Breymann, W., A. Dias and P. Embrechts (2003) Dependence structures for multivariate high-frequency data in finance. Quantitative Finance 3, 1-14

Genest, C., B. Remillard, and D. Beaudoin (2009) Goodness-of-fit tests for copulas: a review and power study. Insur. Math. Econ. 44, 199-213.

Huang, w. and A. Prokhorov (2011). A goodness-of-fit test for copulas. to appear in Econometric Reviews

Schepsmeier, U. (2013) A goodness-of-fit test for regular vine copula models. Preprint http://arxiv.org/abs/1306.0818

Schepsmeier, U. (2015) Efficient information based goodness-of-fit tests for vine copula models with fixed margins. Journal of Multivariate Analysis 138, 34-52.

White, H. (1982) Maximum likelihood estimation of misspecified models, Econometrica, 50, 1-26.

#### See Also

```
BiCopGofTest, RVinePIT
```

## **Examples**

RVineGrad

Gradient of the Log-Likelihood of an R-Vine Copula Model

## **Description**

This function calculates the gradient of the log-likelihood of a d-dimensional R-vine copula model with respect to the copula parameter and evaluates it on a given copula data set.

RVineGrad 111

## Usage

```
RVineGrad(data, RVM, par = RVM$par, par2 = RVM$par2, start.V = NA,
    posParams = (RVM$family > 0))
```

#### **Arguments**

data An N x d data matrix (with uniform margins).

RVM An RVineMatrix object including the structure and the pair-copula families and

parameters.

Only the following copula families are allowed in RVM\$family

0 = independence copula1 = Gaussian copula

2 = Student t copula (t-copula)

3 = Clayton copula4 = Gumbel copula5 = Frank copula

6 = Joe copula

13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")

14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")

16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")

23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)
24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)
26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)
33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)

34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees) 36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)

par A d x d matrix with the pair-copula parameters (optional; default: par = RVM\$par).

par2 A d x d matrix with the second parameters of pair-copula families with two

parameters (optional; default: par2 = RVM\$par2).

start. V Transformations (h-functions and log-likelihoods of each pair-copula) of previ-

ous calculations (see output; default: start.V = NA).

posParams A d x d matrix indicating which copula has to be considered in the gradient

(default: posParams = (RVM\$family > 0)).

# **Details**

The ordering of the gradient is due to the ordering of the R-vine matrix. The gradient starts at the lower right corner of the R-vine matrix and goes column by column to the left and up, i.e. the first entry of the gradient is the last entry of the second last column of the par-matrix followed by the last entry of the third last column and the second last entry of this column. If there is a copula family with two parameters, i.e. the t-copula, the derivative with respect to the second parameter is at the end of the gradient vector in order of their occurrence.

#### Value

gradient The calculated gradient of the log-likelihood value of the R-vine copula model. (three matrices: direct, indirect and value).

112 RVineGrad

## Note

The gradient for R-vine copula models with two parameter Archimedean copulas, i.e. BB1, BB6, BB7, BB8 and their rotated versions can not yet be calculated. The derivatives of these bivariate copulas are more complicated.

#### Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier, Jakob Stoeber

#### References

Dissmann, J. F., E. C. Brechmann, C. Czado, and D. Kurowicka (2013). Selecting and estimating regular vine copulae and application to financial returns. Computational Statistics & Data Analysis, 59 (1), 52-69.

Schepsmeier, U. and J. Stoeber (2014) Derivatives and Fisher information of bivariate copulas. Statistical Papers, 55(2), 525-542. online first: http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s00362-013-0498-x.

Web supplement: Derivatives and Fisher Information of bivariate copulas. http://mediatum.ub.tum.de/node?id=1119201

Stoeber, J. and U. Schepsmeier (2013). Estimating standard errors in regular vine copula models. Computational Statistics, 28 (6), 2679-2707 http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s00180-013-0423-8#.

#### See Also

```
BiCopDeriv, BiCopDeriv2, BiCopHfuncDeriv, BiCopHfuncDeriv2, RVineMatrix, RVineMLE, RVineHessian
```

```
# define 5-dimensional R-vine tree structure matrix
Matrix <- c(5, 2, 3, 1, 4,
            0, 2, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 1)
Matrix <- matrix(Matrix, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula family matrix
family <-c(0, 1, 3, 4, 4,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 3,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
family <- matrix(family, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par <- c(0, 0.2, 0.9, 1.5, 3.9,
         0, 0, 1.1, 1.6, 0.9,
         0, 0, 0, 1.9, 0.5,
```

RVineHessian 113

RVineHessian

Hessian Matrix of the Log-Likelihood of an R-Vine Copula Model

# Description

This function calculates the Hessian matrix of the log-likelihood of a d-dimensional R-vine copula model with respect to the copula parameter and evaluates it on a given copula data set.

#### **Usage**

```
RVineHessian(data, RVM)
```

# **Arguments**

data An N x d data matrix (with uniform margins).

RVM An RVineMatrix object including the structure, the pair-copula families, and the parameters.

Only the following copula families are allowed in RVM\$family

0 = independence copula1 = Gaussian copula

2 = Student t copula (t-copula)

3 = Clayton copula4 = Gumbel copula5 = Frank copula6 = Joe copula

13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton") 14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel") 114 RVineHessian

```
16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")
23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)
24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)
26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees)
33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees)
34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees)
36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees)
```

## Value

hessian The calculated Hessian matrix of the log-likelihood value of the R-vine copula

model.

der The product of the gradient vector with its transposed version.

#### Note

The Hessian matrix is not available for R-vine copula models with two parameter Archimedean copulas, i.e. BB1, BB6, BB7, BB8 and their rotated versions.

## Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier, Jakob Stoeber

#### References

Dissmann, J. F., E. C. Brechmann, C. Czado, and D. Kurowicka (2013). Selecting and estimating regular vine copulae and application to financial returns. Computational Statistics & Data Analysis, 59 (1), 52-69.

Schepsmeier, U. and J. Stoeber (2014) Derivatives and Fisher information of bivariate copulas. Statistical Papers, 55(2), 525-542. online first: http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s00362-013-0498-x.

Web supplement: Derivatives and Fisher Information of bivariate copulas. http://mediatum.ub.tum.de/node?id=1119201

Stoeber, J. and U. Schepsmeier (2013). Estimating standard errors in regular vine copula models. Computational Statistics, 28 (6), 2679-2707 http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s00180-013-0423-8#.

#### See Also

```
BiCopDeriv, BiCopDeriv2, BiCopHfuncDeriv, BiCopHfuncDeriv2, RVineMatrix, RVineMLE, RVineGrad
```

```
# define 5-dimensional R-vine tree structure matrix Matrix <- c(5, 2, 3, 1, 4, 0, 2, 3, 4, 1, 0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
```

RVineLogLik 115

```
0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 1)
Matrix <- matrix(Matrix, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula family matrix
family <-c(0, 1, 3, 4, 4,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 3,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
family <- matrix(family, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par <- c(0, 0.2, 0.9, 1.5, 3.9,
         0, 0, 1.1, 1.6, 0.9,
         0, 0, 0, 1.9, 0.5,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 4.8,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
par <- matrix(par, 5, 5)</pre>
# define second R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par2 <- matrix(0, 5, 5)</pre>
# define RVineMatrix object
RVM <- RVineMatrix(Matrix = Matrix, family = family,</pre>
                    par = par, par2 = par2,
                    names = c("V1", "V2", "V3", "V4", "V5"))
# simulate a sample of size 300 from the R-vine copula model
set.seed(123)
simdata <- RVineSim(300, RVM)</pre>
# compute the Hessian matrix of the first row of the data
out2 <- RVineHessian(simdata[1,], RVM)</pre>
out2$hessian
```

RVineLogLik

Log-Likelihood of an R-Vine Copula Model

## **Description**

This function calculates the log-likelihood of a d-dimensional R-vine copula model for a given copula data set.

# Usage

```
RVineLogLik(data, RVM, par = RVM$par, par2 = RVM$par2,
   separate = FALSE, verbose = TRUE, check.pars = TRUE,
   calculate.V = TRUE)
```

116 RVineLogLik

#### **Arguments**

data An N x d data matrix (with uniform margins). **RVM** An RVineMatrix object including the structure and the pair-copula families and parameters. A d x d matrix with the pair-copula parameters (optional; default: par = RVM\$par). par A d x d matrix with the second parameters of pair-copula families with two par2 parameters (optional; default: par2 = RVM\$par2). Logical; whether log-likelihoods are returned point wisely (default: separate = FALSE). separate verbose In case something goes wrong, additional output will be plotted. check.pars logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are omitted (should only be used with care). calculate.V logical; whether V matrices should be calculated. Default is TRUE, but requires a lot of memory when dimension is large. Use FALSE for a memory efficient

#### **Details**

For observations  $u = (u'_1, ..., u'_N)'$  the log-likelihood of a d-dimensional R-vine copula with d-1 trees and corresponding edge sets  $E_1, ..., E_{d-1}$  is given by

$$loglik := l_{RVine}\left(oldsymbol{ heta}|oldsymbol{u}
ight)$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^{N} \sum_{\ell=1}^{d-1} \sum_{e \in E_{\ell}} \ln[c_{j(e),k(e)|D(e)}(F(u_{i,j(e)}|u_{i,D(e)}), F(u_{i,k(e)}|u_{i,D(e)})|\theta_{j(e),k(e)|D(e)})]$$

where  $u_i = (u_{i,1}, ..., u_{i,d})' \in [0,1]^d$ , i = 1, ..., N. Further  $c_{j(e),k(e)|D(e)}$  denotes a bivariate copula density associated to an edge e and with parameter(s)  $\theta_{j(e),k(e)|D(e)}$ . Conditional distribution functions such as  $F(u_{i,j(e)}|u_{i,D(e)})$  are obtained recursively using the relationship

$$h(u|\pmb{v},\pmb{\theta}) := F(u|\pmb{v}) = dC_{uv_j|v_{-j}}(F(u|v_{-j}),F(v_j|v_{-j}))/dF(v_j|v_{-j}),$$

where  $C_{uv_j|v_{-j}}$  is a bivariate copula distribution function with parameter(s)  $\theta$  and  $v_{-j}$  denotes a vector with the j-th component  $v_j$  removed. The notation of h-functions is introduced for convenience. For more details see Dissmann et al. (2013).

### Value

loglik The calculated log-likelihood value of the R-vine copula model.

The stored transformations (h-functions and log-likelihoods of each pair-copula) which may be used for posterior updates (three matrices: direct, indirect and value).

## Author(s)

٧

Ulf Schepsmeier, Jeffrey Dissmann, Jakob Stoeber

version.

RVineLogLik 117

## References

Dissmann, J. F., E. C. Brechmann, C. Czado, and D. Kurowicka (2013). Selecting and estimating regular vine copulae and application to financial returns. Computational Statistics & Data Analysis, 59 (1), 52-69.

#### See Also

```
BiCopHfunc, RVineMatrix, RVineMLE, RVineAIC, RVineBIC
```

```
# define 5-dimensional R-vine tree structure matrix
Matrix <- c(5, 2, 3, 1, 4,
            0, 2, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 1)
Matrix <- matrix(Matrix, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula family matrix
family <-c(0, 1, 3, 4, 4,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 3,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
family <- matrix(family, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par <- c(0, 0.2, 0.9, 1.5, 3.9,
         0, 0, 1.1, 1.6, 0.9,
         0, 0, 0, 1.9, 0.5,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 4.8,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
par <- matrix(par, 5, 5)</pre>
# define second R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par2 \leftarrow matrix(0, 5, 5)
# define RVineMatrix object
RVM <- RVineMatrix(Matrix = Matrix, family = family,
                    par = par, par2 = par2,
                    names = c("V1", "V2", "V3", "V4", "V5"))
# simulate a sample of size 300 from the R-vine copula model
set.seed(123)
simdata <- RVineSim(300, RVM)</pre>
# compute the log-likelihood
11 <- RVineLogLik(simdata, RVM, separate = FALSE)</pre>
ll$loglik
```

118 RVineMatrix

```
# compute the pointwise log-likelihoods
11 <- RVineLogLik(simdata, RVM, separate = TRUE)
11$loglik</pre>
```

RVineMatrix

R-Vine Copula Model in Matrix Notation

## **Description**

This function creates an RVineMatrix object which encodes an R-vine copula model. It contains the matrix identifying the R-vine tree structure, the matrix identifying the copula families utilized and two matrices for corresponding parameter values.

## Usage

```
RVineMatrix(Matrix, family = array(0, dim = dim(Matrix)),
par = array(NA, dim = dim(Matrix)), par2 = array(NA, dim =
dim(Matrix)), names = NULL, check.pars = TRUE)
```

## **Arguments**

Matrix

Lower (or upper) triangular d x d matrix that defines the R-vine tree structure.

family

Lower (or upper) triangular d x d matrix with zero diagonal entries that assigns the pair-copula families to each (conditional) pair defined by Matrix (default: family = array(0, dim=dim(Matrix))). The bivariate copula families are defined as follows:

0 = independence copula

1 = Gaussian copula

2 = Student t copula (t-copula)

3 = Clayton copula

4 = Gumbel copula

5 = Frank copula

6 =Joe copula

7 = BB1 copula

8 = BB6 copula

9 = BB7 copula

10 = BB8 copula

13 = rotated Clayton copula (180 degrees; "survival Clayton")

14 = rotated Gumbel copula (180 degrees; "survival Gumbel")

16 = rotated Joe copula (180 degrees; "survival Joe")

17 = rotated BB1 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB1")

18 = rotated BB6 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB6")

19 = rotated BB7 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB7")

20 = rotated BB8 copula (180 degrees; "survival BB8")

23 = rotated Clayton copula (90 degrees)

24 = rotated Gumbel copula (90 degrees)

**RVineMatrix** 119

> 26 = rotated Joe copula (90 degrees) 27 = rotated BB1 copula (90 degrees) 28 = rotated BB6 copula (90 degrees) 29 = rotated BB7 copula (90 degrees) 30 = rotated BB8 copula (90 degrees) 33 = rotated Clayton copula (270 degrees) 34 = rotated Gumbel copula (270 degrees) 36 = rotated Joe copula (270 degrees) 37 = rotated BB1 copula (270 degrees) 38 = rotated BB6 copula (270 degrees) 39 = rotated BB7 copula (270 degrees) 40 = rotated BB8 copula (270 degrees) 104 = Tawn type 1 copula114 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (180 degrees) 124 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (90 degrees) 134 = rotated Tawn type 1 copula (270 degrees) 204 = Tawn type 2 copula214 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (180 degrees) 224 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (90 degrees) 234 = rotated Tawn type 2 copula (270 degrees) Lower (or upper) triangular d x d matrix with zero diagonal entries that assigns

par

the (first) pair-copula parameter to each (conditional) pair defined by Matrix

(default: par = array(NA, dim = dim(Matrix))).

Lower (or upper) triangular d x d matrix with zero diagonal entries that assigns par2

> the second parameter for pair-copula families with two parameters to each (conditional) pair defined by Matrix (default: par2 = array(NA, dim = dim(Matrix))).

A vector of names for the d variables; default: names = NULL. names

check.pars logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are

omitted (should only be used with care).

#### Value

An object of class RVineMatrix, i.e., a list with the following components:

Matrix R-vine tree structure matrix.

family pair-copula family matrix with values as above.

pair-copula parameter matrix. par

second pair-copula parameter matrix with parameters necessary for pair-copula par2

families with two parameters.

names variable names (defaults to V1, V2, ...).

MaxMat, CondDistr

additional matrices required internally for evaluating the density etc.,

type the type of the vine copula structure; possible types are:

> • "C-vine": all trees consist of a star, • "D-vine": all trees consist of a path,

120 RVineMatrix

• "R-vine": all structures that are neither a C- nor D-vine,

tau Kendall's tau matrix,

taildep matrices of lower and upper tail dependence coefficients,

beta Blomqvist's beta matrix.

Objects of this class are also returned by the RVineSeqEst, RVineCopSelect, and RVineStructureSelect functions. In this case, further information about the fit is added.

#### Note

For a comprehensive summary of the vine copula model, use summary(object); to see all its contents, use str(object).

The RVineMatrix function automatically checks if the given matrix is a valid R-vine matrix (see RVineMatrixCheck).

Although the function allows upper triangular matrices as its input, it will always store them as lower triangular matrices.

## Author(s)

Jeffrey Dissmann, Thomas Nagler

#### References

Dissmann, J. F., E. C. Brechmann, C. Czado, and D. Kurowicka (2013). Selecting and estimating regular vine copulae and application to financial returns. Computational Statistics & Data Analysis, 59 (1), 52-69.

#### See Also

RVineMatrixCheck, RVineSeqEst, RVineCopSelect, RVineStructureSelect, RVineSim, C2RVine, D2RVine

RVineMatrixCheck 121

```
par <- c(0, 0.2, 0.9, 1.5, 3.9,
         0, 0, 1.1, 1.6, 0.9,
         0, 0, 0, 1.9, 0.5,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 4.8,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
par <- matrix(par, 5, 5)</pre>
# define second R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par2 <- matrix(0, 5, 5)</pre>
## define RVineMatrix object
RVM <- RVineMatrix(Matrix = Matrix, family = family,</pre>
                   par = par, par2 = par2,
                   names = c("V1", "V2", "V3", "V4", "V5"))
## see the object's content or a summary
str(RVM)
summary(RVM)
## inspect the model using plots
## Not run: plot(RVM) # tree structure
contour(RVM) # contour plots of all pair-copulas
## simulate from the vine copula model
plot(RVineSim(500, RVM))
```

RVineMatrixCheck

R-Vine Matrix Check

## **Description**

The given matrix is tested to be a valid R-vine matrix.

# Usage

RVineMatrixCheck(M)

# **Arguments**

М

A dxd vine matrix.

#### Value

code

1 for OK;

-4 matrix is neither lower nor upper triangular;

-3 diagonal can not be put in order d:1;

-2 for not permutation of j:d in column d-j;

-1 if cannot find proper binary array from array in natural order.

122 RVineMatrixCheck

## Note

The matrix M do not have to be given in natural order or the diagonal in order d:1. The test checks if it can be done in order to be a valid R-vine matrix.

If a function in this package needs the natural order the RVineMatrix object is automatically "normalized".

The function RVineMatrix automatically checks if the given R-vine matrix is valid.

## Author(s)

Harry Joe

## References

Joe H, Cooke RM and Kurowicka D (2011). Regular vines: generation algorithm and number of equivalence classes. In Dependence Modeling: Vine Copula Handbook, pp 219–231. World Scientific, Singapore.

#### See Also

RVineMatrix

```
5, 5, 0, 0, 0, 0,
              3, 4, 4, 0, 0, 0,
              4, 3, 3, 3, 0, 0,
              1, 1, 2, 2, 2, 0,
              2, 2, 1, 1, 1, 1), 6, 6, byrow = TRUE)
b1 <- RVineMatrixCheck(A1)</pre>
print(b1)
# improper vine matrix, code=-1
A2 <- matrix(c(6, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0,
              5, 5, 0, 0, 0, 0,
              4, 4, 4, 0, 0, 0,
              1, 3, 3, 3, 0, 0,
              3, 1, 2, 2, 2, 0,
              2, 2, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1), 6, 6, byrow = TRUE)
b2 <- RVineMatrixCheck(A2)
print(b2)
# improper vine matrix, code=-2
A3 <- matrix(c(6, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0,
              3, 5, 0, 0, 0, 0,
              3, 4, 4, 0, 0, 0,
              4, 3, 3, 3, 0, 0,
              1, 1, 2, 2, 2, 0,
              2, 2, 1, 1, 1, 1), 6, 6, byrow = TRUE)
b3 <- RVineMatrixCheck(A3)
print(b3)
```

RVineMatrixNormalize 123

RVineMatrixNormalize Normalization of R-Vine Matrix

# Description

An RVineMatrix is permuted to achieve a natural ordering (i.e. diag(RVM\$Matrix) == d:1)

# Usage

```
RVineMatrixNormalize(RVM)
```

# Arguments

RVM RVineMatrix defining the R-vine structure

#### Value

RVM An RVineMatrix in natural ordering with entries in RVM\$names keeping track of

the reordering.

```
Matrix <- matrix(c(5, 2, 3, 1, 4,
                   0, 2, 3, 4, 1,
                   0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
                   0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
                   0, 0, 0, 0, 1), 5, 5)
family \leftarrow matrix(1,5,5)
par <- matrix(c(0, 0.2, 0.9, 0.5, 0.8,
                    0, 0.1, 0.6, 0.9,
                0,
                    0, 0, 0.7, 0.5,
                0,
                     0, 0, 0, 0.8,
                         0, 0, 0), 5, 5)
# define RVineMatrix object
RVM <- RVineMatrix(Matrix, family, par)</pre>
# normalise the RVine
RVineMatrixNormalize(RVM)
```

124 RVineMatrixSample

RVineMatrixSample	Random sampling of R-Vine matrices
INVITICIDA CI INDUIDIC	Randoni samping of it vine maintees

# **Description**

Sample R-Vine matrices based on the algorithm of Joe et al. (2011).

## Usage

```
RVineMatrixSample(d, size = 1, naturalOrder = FALSE)
```

## **Arguments**

d Dimension of the R-Vine matrices.
size Number of matrices to sample.

naturalOrder Should the matrices be in the natural order (default: naturalOrder = FALSE).

#### Value

A list of length size with each element containing one R-Vine matrix.

### Note

For some reason, our implementation of Joe et al.'s algorithm always returns a star in the first tree. To fix this, we sample a vine matrix of dimension d + 1 and remove the first tree afterwards

# Author(s)

Thibault Vatter

#### References

Joe H, Cooke RM and Kurowicka D (2011). Regular vines: generation algorithm and number of equivalence classes. In Dependence Modeling: Vine Copula Handbook, pp 219–231. World Scientific, Singapore.

## See Also

RVineMatrix, RVineMatrixCheck

```
# Matrix and sample sizes
d <- 10
size <- 5

# Sample R-vine matrices
RVM <- RVineMatrixSample(d, size)</pre>
```

RVineMLE 125

```
sapply(RVM, RVineMatrixCheck)

# Sample R-vine matrices in the natural order
RVM <- RVineMatrixSample(d, size, naturalOrder = TRUE)
sapply(RVM, RVineMatrixCheck)</pre>
```

RVineMLE

Maximum Likelihood Estimation of an R-Vine Copula Model

# **Description**

This function calculates the maximum likelihood estimate (MLE) of the R-vine copula model parameters using sequential estimates as initial values (if not provided).

# Usage

```
RVineMLE(data, RVM, start = RVM$par, start2 = RVM$par2, maxit = 200, max.df = 30, max.BB = list(BB1 = c(5, 6), BB6 = c(6, 6), BB7 = c(5, 6), BB8 = c(6, 1)), grad = FALSE, hessian = FALSE, se = FALSE, ...)
```

## **Arguments**

data	An N x d data matrix (with uniform margins).
RVM	An RVineMatrix object including the structure and the pair-copula families and parameters (if known).
start	Lower triangular d x d matrix with zero diagonal entries with starting values for the pair-copula parameters (optional; otherwise they are calculated via RVineSeqEst; default: start = RVM\$par).
start2	Lower triangular d x d matrix with zero diagonal entries with starting values for the second parameters of pair-copula families with two parameters (optional; otherwise they are calculated via $RVineSeqEst$ ; default: $start2 = RVM$par2$ ).
maxit	The maximum number of iteration steps (optional; default: maxit = 200).
max.df	Numeric; upper bound for the estimation of the degrees of freedom parameter of the t-copula (default: max.df = 30; for more details see BiCopEst).
max.BB	List; upper bounds for the estimation of the two parameters (in absolute values) of the BB1, BB6, BB7 and BB8 copulas (default: max.BB = list(BB1=c(5,6),BB6=c(6,6),BB7=c(5,6),BB8=c(6,1))).
grad	If RVM\$family only contains one parameter copula families or the t-copula the analytical gradient can be used for maximization of the log-likelihood (see RVineGrad; default: grad = FALSE).
hessian	Logical; whether the Hessian matrix of parameter estimates is estimated (default: hessian = FALSE). Note that this is not the Hessian Matrix calculated via RVineHessian but via finite differences.

126 RVineMLE

se Logical; whether standard errors of parameter estimates are estimated on the

basis of the Hessian matrix (see above; default: se = FALSE).

... Further arguments for optim (e.g. factr controls the convergence of the "L-

BFGS-B" method, or trace, a non-negative integer, determines if tracing infor-

mation on the progress of the optimization is produced.)

For more details see the documentation of optim.

#### Value

RVM RVineMatrix object with the calculated parameters stored in RVM\$par and RVM\$par2.

Additional information about the fit is added (e.g., log-likelihood, AIC, BIC).

value Optimized log-likelihood value corresponding to the estimated pair-copula pa-

rameters.

convergence An integer code indicating either successful convergence (convergence = 0)

or an error:

1 = the iteration limit maxit has been reached

51 = a warning from the "L-BFGS-B" method; see component message for

further details

52 = an error from the "L-BFGS-B" method; see component message for further

details

message A character string giving any additional information returned by optim, or NULL.

counts A two-element integer vector giving the number of calls to fn and gr respec-

tively. This excludes those calls needed to compute the Hessian, if requested, and any calls to fn to compute a finite-difference approximation to the gradient.

hessian If hessian = TRUE, the Hessian matrix is returned. Its calculation is on the

basis of finite differences (output of optim).

#### Note

RVineMLE uses the L-BFGS-B method for optimization.

If the analytical gradient is used for maximization, computations may be up to 10 times faster than using finite differences.

## Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier, Jeffrey Dissmann

#### References

Dissmann, J. F., E. C. Brechmann, C. Czado, and D. Kurowicka (2013). Selecting and estimating regular vine copulae and application to financial returns. Computational Statistics & Data Analysis, 59 (1), 52-69.

Stoeber, J. and U. Schepsmeier (2013). Estimating standard errors in regular vine copula models. Computational Statistics, 1-29 http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s00180-013-0423-8#.

#### See Also

RVineSeqEst, RVineStructureSelect, RVineMatrix, RVineGrad, RVineHessian

RVinePar2Beta 127

```
# define 5-dimensional R-vine tree structure matrix
Matrix <- c(5, 2, 3, 1, 4,
            0, 2, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 1)
Matrix <- matrix(Matrix, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula family matrix
family <-c(0, 1, 3, 4, 4,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 3,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
family <- matrix(family, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par <- c(0, 0.2, 0.9, 1.5, 3.9,
         0, 0, 1.1, 1.6, 0.9,
         0, 0, 0, 1.9, 0.5,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 4.8,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
par <- matrix(par, 5, 5)</pre>
# define second R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par2 <- matrix(0, 5, 5)</pre>
# define RVineMatrix object
RVM <- RVineMatrix(Matrix = Matrix, family = family,
                   par = par, par2 = par2,
                   names = c("V1", "V2", "V3", "V4", "V5"))
# simulate a sample of size 300 from the R-vine copula model
set.seed(123)
simdata <- RVineSim(300, RVM)</pre>
# compute the MLE
mle <- RVineMLE(simdata, RVM, grad = TRUE, trace = 0)</pre>
# compare parameters
round(mle$RVM$par - RVM$par, 2)
```

128 RVinePar2Beta

## **Description**

This function computes the values of Blomqvist's beta corresponding to the parameters of an R-vine copula model.

## Usage

```
RVinePar2Beta(RVM, check.pars = TRUE)
```

## Arguments

RVM An RVineMatrix object.

Note that the Student's t-copula is not allowed since the CDF of the t-copula is

not implemented (see BiCopCDF and BiCopPar2Beta).

check.pars logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are

omitted (should only be used with care).

#### Value

Matrix with the same structure as the family and parameter matrices of the RVineMatrix object RVM where the entries are values of Blomqvist's beta corresponding to the families and parameters of the R-vine copula model given by RVM.

## Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier

# See Also

```
RVineMatrix, BiCopPar2Beta
```

```
# define 5-dimensional R-vine tree structure matrix
Matrix <- c(5, 2, 3, 1, 4,
            0, 2, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 1)
Matrix <- matrix(Matrix, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula family matrix
family <-c(0, 1, 3, 4, 4,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 3,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
family <- matrix(family, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par <- c(0, 0.2, 0.9, 1.5, 3.9,
```

RVinePar2Tau 129

RVinePar2Tau

Kendall's Tau Values of an R-Vine Copula Model

# Description

This function computes the values of Kendall's tau corresponding to the parameters of an R-vine copula model.

## Usage

```
RVinePar2Tau(RVM, check.pars = TRUE)
```

## **Arguments**

RVM An RVineMatrix object.

check.pars logical; default is TRUE; if FALSE, checks for family/parameter-consistency are

omitted (should only be used with care).

### Value

Matrix with the same structure as the family and parameter matrices of the RVineMatrix object RVM where the entries are values of Kendall's tau corresponding to the families and parameters of the R-vine copula model given by RVM.

## Author(s)

Jeffrey Dissmann

#### See Also

RVineMatrix, BiCopPar2Tau

RVinePDF

## **Examples**

```
# define 5-dimensional R-vine tree structure matrix
Matrix <- c(5, 2, 3, 1, 4,
            0, 2, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 1)
Matrix <- matrix(Matrix, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula family matrix
family <-c(0, 1, 3, 4, 4,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 3,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
family <- matrix(family, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par <- c(0, 0.2, 0.9, 1.5, 3.9,
         0, 0, 1.1, 1.6, 0.9,
         0, 0, 0, 1.9, 0.5,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 4.8,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
par <- matrix(par, 5, 5)</pre>
# define second R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par2 <- matrix(0, 5, 5)</pre>
# define RVineMatrix object
RVM <- RVineMatrix(Matrix = Matrix, family = family,</pre>
                   par = par, par2 = par2,
                    names = c("V1", "V2", "V3", "V4", "V5"))
# compute the Kendall's tau values
tau <- RVinePar2Tau(RVM)</pre>
```

RVinePDF

PDF of an R-Vine Copula Model

## **Description**

This function calculates the probability density function of a d-dimensional R-vine copula.

# Usage

```
RVinePDF(newdata, RVM, verbose = TRUE)
```

RVinePDF 131

## **Arguments**

newdata An N x d data matrix that specifies where the density shall be evaluated.

RVM An RVineMatrix object including the structure and the pair-copula families and

parameters.

verbose In case something goes wrong, additional output will be plotted.

## **Details**

The density of a d-dimensional R-vine copula with d-1 trees and corresponding edge sets  $E_1, ..., E_{d-1}$  is given by

$$\prod_{\ell=1}^{d-1} \prod_{e \in E_{\ell}} c_{j(e),k(e)|D(e)}(F(u_{j(e)}|u_{D(e)}), F(u_{k(e)}|u_{D(e)})|\theta_{j(e),k(e)|D(e)}),$$

where  $\mathbf{u} = (u_1, ..., u_d)' \in [0, 1]^d$ . Further  $c_{j(e), k(e)|D(e)}$  denotes a bivariate copula density associated to an edge e and with parameter(s)  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{j(e), k(e)|D(e)}$ . Conditional distribution functions such as  $F(u_{j(e)}|\mathbf{u}_{D(e)})$  are obtained recursively using the relationship

$$h(u|\mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) := F(u|\mathbf{v}) = dC_{uv_j|v_{-j}}(F(u|v_{-j}), F(v_j|v_{-j}))/dF(v_j|v_{-j}),$$

where  $C_{uv_j|v_{-j}}$  is a bivariate copula distribution function with parameter(s)  $\theta$  and  $v_{-j}$  denotes a vector with the j-th component  $v_j$  removed. The notation of h-functions is introduced for convenience. For more details see Dissmann et al. (2013).

The function is actually just a wrapper to RVineLogLik.

## Author(s)

Thomas Nagler

#### References

Dissmann, J. F., E. C. Brechmann, C. Czado, and D. Kurowicka (2013). Selecting and estimating regular vine copulae and application to financial returns. Computational Statistics & Data Analysis, 59 (1), 52-69.

# See Also

BiCopHfunc, RVineMatrix, RVineMLE, RVineAIC, RVineBIC

RVinePIT

```
# define R-vine pair-copula family matrix
family <-c(0, 1, 3, 4, 4,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 3,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
family <- matrix(family, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par <- c(0, 0.2, 0.9, 1.5, 3.9,
         0, 0, 1.1, 1.6, 0.9,
         0, 0, 0, 1.9, 0.5,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 4.8,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
par <- matrix(par, 5, 5)</pre>
# define second R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par2 <- matrix(0, 5, 5)</pre>
# define RVineMatrix object
RVM <- RVineMatrix(Matrix = Matrix, family = family,</pre>
                   par = par, par2 = par2,
                   names = c("V1", "V2", "V3", "V4", "V5"))
# compute the density at (0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5)
RVinePDF(c(0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5), RVM)
```

RVinePIT

Probability Integral Transformation for R-Vine Copula Models

# Description

This function applies the probability integral transformation (PIT) for R-vine copula models to given copula data.

# Usage

```
RVinePIT(data, RVM)
```

# **Arguments**

data An N x d data matrix (with uniform margins).

RVM RVineMatrix objects of the R-vine model.

RVinePIT 133

#### **Details**

The multivariate probability integral transformation (PIT) of Rosenblatt (1952) transforms the copula data  $u = (u_1, \ldots, u_d)$  with a given multivariate copula C into independent data in  $[0, 1]^d$ , where d is the dimension of the data set.

Let  $u = (u_1, \dots, u_d)$  denote copula data of dimension d. Further let C be the joint cdf of  $u = (u_1, \dots, u_d)$ . Then Rosenblatt's transformation of u, denoted as  $y = (y_1, \dots, y_d)$ , is defined as

$$y_1 := u_1, \ y_2 := C(u_2|u_1), \dots \ y_d := C(u_d|u_1, \dots, u_{d-1}),$$

where  $C(u_k|u_1,\ldots,u_{k-1})$  is the conditional copula of  $U_k$  given  $U_1=u_1,\ldots,U_{k-1}=u_{k-1},k=2,\ldots,d$ . The data vector  $y=(y_1,\ldots,y_d)$  is now i.i.d. with  $y_i\sim U[0,1]$ . The algorithm for the R-vine PIT is given in the appendix of Schepsmeier (2015).

#### Value

An N x d matrix of PIT data from the given R-vine copula model.

## Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier

#### References

Rosenblatt, M. (1952). Remarks on a Multivariate Transformation. The Annals of Mathematical Statistics 23 (3), 470-472.

Schepsmeier, U. (2015) Efficient information based goodness-of-fit tests for vine copula models with fixed margins. Journal of Multivariate Analysis 138, 34-52.

#### See Also

RVineGofTest

```
# load data set
data(daxreturns)

# select the R-vine structure, families and parameters
RVM <- RVineStructureSelect(daxreturns[,1:3], c(1:6))

# PIT data
pit <- RVinePIT(daxreturns[,1:3], RVM)

par(mfrow = c(1,2))
plot(daxreturns[,1], daxreturns[,2]) # correlated data
plot(pit[,1], pit[,2]) # i.i.d. data

cor(pit, method = "kendall")</pre>
```

134 RVineSeqEst

RVineSeqEst Sequential Estimation of an R-Vine	Copula Model
--	--------------

# Description

This function sequentially estimates the pair-copula parameters of a d-dimensional R-vine copula model as specified by the corresponding RVineMatrix object.

# Usage

```
RVineSeqEst(data, RVM, method = "mle", se = FALSE, max.df = 30, max.BB = list(BB1 = c(5, 6), BB6 = c(6, 6), BB7 = c(5, 6), BB8 = c(6, 1)), progress = FALSE, weights = NA, cores = 1)
```

# Arguments

data	An N x d data matrix (with uniform margins).
RVM	An RVineMatrix object including the structure, the pair-copula families and the pair-copula parameters (if they are known).
method	indicates the estimation method: either maximum likelihood estimation (method = "mle"; default) or inversion of Kendall's tau (method = "itau"). For method = "itau" only one parameter families and the Student t copula can be used (family = 1,2,3,4,5,6,13,14,16,23,24,26,33,34 or 36). For the t-copula, par2 is found by a crude profile likelihood optimization over the interval (2, 10].
se	Logical; whether standard errors are estimated (default: se = FALSE).
max.df	Numeric; upper bound for the estimation of the degrees of freedom parameter of the t-copula (default: max.df = 30; for more details see BiCopEst).
max.BB	List; upper bounds for the estimation of the two parameters (in absolute values) of the BB1, BB6, BB7 and BB8 copulas (default: max.BB = list(BB1=c(5,6),BB6=c(6,6),BB7=c(5,6),BB8=c(6,1))).
progress	Logical; whether the pairwise estimation progress is printed (default: progress = FALSE).
weights	Numerical; weights for each observation (optional).
cores	integer; if cores > 1, estimation will be parallelized within each tree (using foreach). However, the overhead caused by parallelization is likely to make the function run slower unless sample size is really large and method = "itau".

## **Details**

The pair-copula parameter estimation is performed tree-wise, i.e., for each R-vine tree the results from the previous tree(s) are used to calculate the new copula parameters using BiCopEst.

RVineSeqEst 135

## Value

An RVineMatrix object with the sequentially estimated parameters stored in RVM\$par and RVM\$par2. The object is augmented by the following information about the fit:

## Note

For a comprehensive summary of the fitted model, use summary(object); to see all its contents, use str(object).

#### Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier, Jeffrey Dissmann, Thomas Nagler

#### See Also

RVineMatrix, BiCop, BiCopEst, plot.RVineMatrix, contour.RVineMatrix, foreach

136 RVineSim

```
par <- c(0, 0.2, 0.9, 1.5, 3.9,
         0, 0, 1.1, 1.6, 0.9,
         0, 0, 0, 1.9, 0.5,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 4.8,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
par <- matrix(par, 5, 5)</pre>
# define second R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par2 <- matrix(0, 5, 5)</pre>
# define RVineMatrix object
RVM <- RVineMatrix(Matrix = Matrix, family = family,</pre>
                   par = par, par2 = par2,
                   names = c("V1", "V2", "V3", "V4", "V5"))
# simulate a sample of size 300 from the R-vine copula model
set.seed(123)
simdata <- RVineSim(300, RVM)</pre>
# sequential estimation
summary(RVineSeqEst(simdata, RVM, method = "itau", se = TRUE))
summary(RVineSeqEst(simdata, RVM, method = "mle", se = TRUE))
```

RVineSim

Simulation from an R-Vine Copula Model

## Description

This function simulates from a given R-vine copula model.

#### Usage

```
RVineSim(N, RVM, U = NULL)
```

## **Arguments**

N Number of d-dimensional observations to simulate.

RVM An RVineMatrix object containing the information of the R-vine copula model.

U If not NULL, an (N,d)-matrix of U[0,1] random variates to be transformed to the

copula sample.

#### Value

An N x d matrix of data simulated from the given R-vine copula model.

#### Author(s)

Jeffrey Dissmann

RVineSim 137

## References

Dissmann, J. F., E. C. Brechmann, C. Czado, and D. Kurowicka (2013). Selecting and estimating regular vine copulae and application to financial returns. Computational Statistics & Data Analysis, 59 (1), 52-69.

#### See Also

```
RVineMatrix, BiCopSim
```

```
# define 5-dimensional R-vine tree structure matrix
Matrix <- c(5, 2, 3, 1, 4,
            0, 2, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 1)
Matrix <- matrix(Matrix, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula family matrix
family <-c(0, 1, 3, 4, 4,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 3,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
family <- matrix(family, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par <- c(0, 0.2, 0.9, 1.5, 3.9,
         0, 0, 1.1, 1.6, 0.9,
         0, 0, 0, 1.9, 0.5,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 4.8,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
par <- matrix(par, 5, 5)</pre>
# define second R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par2 <- matrix(0, 5, 5)</pre>
# define RVineMatrix object
RVM <- RVineMatrix(Matrix = Matrix, family = family,</pre>
                    par = par, par2 = par2,
                    names = c("V1", "V2", "V3", "V4", "V5"))
# simulate a sample of size 300 from the R-vine copula model
set.seed(123)
simdata <- RVineSim(300, RVM)</pre>
```

138 RVineStdError

RVineStdError	Standard Errors of an R-Vine Copula Model

#### **Description**

This function calculates the standard errors of a d-dimensional R-vine copula model given the Hessian matrix.

## Usage

RVineStdError(hessian, RVM)

## **Arguments**

hessian The Hessian matrix of the given R-vine.

RVM An RVineMatrix object including the structure, the pair-copula families, and

the parameters.

#### Value

se The calculated standard errors for the first parameter matrix. The entries are

ordered with respect to the ordering of the RVM\$par matrix.

se2 The calculated standard errors for the second parameter matrix.

#### Note

The negative Hessian matrix should be positive semidefinite. Otherwise NAs will be returned in some entries and the non-NA entries may be wrong. If the negative Hessian matrix is negative definite, then one could try a near positive matrix. The package Matrix provides a function called nearPD to estimate a matrix which is positive definite and close to the given matrix.

### Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier, Jakob Stoeber

#### References

Dissmann, J. F., E. C. Brechmann, C. Czado, and D. Kurowicka (2013). Selecting and estimating regular vine copulae and application to financial returns. Computational Statistics & Data Analysis, 59 (1), 52-69.

Schepsmeier, U. and J. Stoeber (2014) Derivatives and Fisher information of bivariate copulas. Statistical Papers, 55(2), 525-542. online first: http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s00362-013-0498-x.

Web supplement: Derivatives and Fisher Information of bivariate copulas. http://mediatum.ub.tum.de/node?id=1119201

Stoeber, J. and U. Schepsmeier (2013). Estimating standard errors in regular vine copula models. Computational Statistics, 28 (6), 2679-2707 http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s00180-013-0423-8#.

RVineStdError 139

## See Also

BiCopDeriv, BiCopDeriv2, BiCopHfuncDeriv, BiCopHfuncDeriv2, RVineMatrix, RVineHessian, RVineGrad

```
# define 5-dimensional R-vine tree structure matrix
Matrix <- c(5, 2, 3, 1, 4,
            0, 2, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 1)
Matrix <- matrix(Matrix, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula family matrix
family <-c(0, 1, 3, 4, 4,
            0, 0, 3, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 4, 1,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 3,
            0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
family <- matrix(family, 5, 5)</pre>
# define R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par <- c(0, 0.2, 0.9, 1.5, 3.9,
         0, 0, 1.1, 1.6, 0.9,
         0, 0, 0, 1.9, 0.5,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 4.8,
         0, 0, 0, 0, 0)
par <- matrix(par, 5, 5)</pre>
# define second R-vine pair-copula parameter matrix
par2 <- matrix(0, 5, 5)</pre>
# define RVineMatrix object
RVM <- RVineMatrix(Matrix = Matrix, family = family,</pre>
                   par = par, par2 = par2,
                   names = c("V1", "V2", "V3", "V4", "V5"))
# simulate a sample of size 300 from the R-vine copula model
set.seed(123)
simdata <- RVineSim(300, RVM)</pre>
# compute the Hessian matrix of the first row of the data
out2 <- RVineHessian(simdata,RVM)</pre>
# get the standard errors
RVineStdError(out2$hessian, RVM)
```

140 RVineStructureSelect

RVineStructureSelect Sequential Specification of R- and C-Vine Copula Models

# **Description**

This function fits either an R- or a C-vine copula model to a d-dimensional copula data set. Tree structures are determined and appropriate pair-copula families are selected using BiCopSelect and estimated sequentially (forward selection of trees).

#### Usage

```
RVineStructureSelect(data, familyset = NA, type = 0,
  selectioncrit = "AIC", indeptest = FALSE, level = 0.05,
  trunclevel = NA, progress = FALSE, weights = NA,
  treecrit = "tau", se = FALSE, rotations = TRUE, method = "mle",
  cores = 1)
```

#### **Arguments**

data An N x d data matrix (with uniform margins).

familyset An integer vector of pair-copula families to select from. The vector has to in-

clude at least one pair-copula family that allows for positive and one that allows for negative dependence. Not listed copula families might be included to better handle limit cases. If familyset = NA (default), selection among all possible families is performed. Coding of pair-copula families is the same as in BiCop.

type Type of the vine model to be specified:

0 or "RVine" = R-vine (default)

1 or "CVine" = C-vine

C- and D-vine copula models with pre-specified order can be specified using CDVineCopSelect of the package CDVine. Similarly, R-vine copula models

with pre-specified tree structure can be specified using  ${\sf RVineCopSelect}$ .

selectioncrit Character indicating the criterion for pair-copula selection. Possible choices:selectioncrit = "AIC"

(default), "BIC", or "logLik" (see BiCopSelect).

indeptest logical; whether a hypothesis test for the independence of u1 and u2 is per-

formed before bivariate copula selection (default: indeptest = FALSE; see BiCopIndTest). The independence copula is chosen for a (conditional) pair if

the null hypothesis of independence cannot be rejected.

level numeric; significance level of the independence test (default: level = 0.05).

trunclevel integer; level of truncation.

progress logical; whether the tree-wise specification progress is printed (default: progress = FALSE).

weights numeric; weights for each observation (optional).

treecrit edge weight for Dissman's structure selection algorithm, see *Details*.

se Logical; whether standard errors are estimated (default: se = FALSE).

rotations If TRUE, all rotations of the families in familyset are included.

RVineStructureSelect 141

method indicates the estimation method: either maximum likelihood estimation (method = "mle"; default) or inversion of Kendall's tau (method = "itau"). For method = "itau" only one parameter families and the Student t copula can be used (family =

1,2,3,4,5,6,13,14,16,23,24,26,33,34 or 36). For the t-copula, par2 is found by a grade profile likelihood entimization even the interval (2,10).

found by a crude profile likelihood optimization over the interval (2, 10].

integer; if cores > 1, estimation will be parallelized within each tree (using foreach). Note that parallelization causes substantial overhead and may be slower than single-threaded computation when dimension, sample size, or

family set are small or method = "itau".

## **Details**

cores

R-vine trees are selected using maximum spanning trees w.r.t. some edge weights. The most commonly used edge weight is the absolute value of the empirical Kendall's tau, say  $\hat{\tau}_{ij}$ . Then, the following optimization problem is solved for each tree:

$$\max \sum_{\text{edges } e_{ij} \in \text{ in spanning tree}} |\hat{\tau}_{ij}|,$$

where a spanning tree is a tree on all nodes. The setting of the first tree selection step is always a complete graph. For subsequent trees, the setting depends on the R-vine construction principles, in particular on the proximity condition.

Some commonly used edge weights are implemented:

"tau" absolute value of empirical Kendall's tau.

"rho" absolute value of empirical Spearman's rho.

"AIC" Akaike information (multiplied by -1).

"BIC" Bayesian information criterion (multiplied by -1).

"cAIC" corrected Akaike information criterion (multiplied by -1).

If the data contain NAs, the edge weights in "tau" and "rho" are multiplied by the square root of the proportion of complete observations. This penalizes pairs where less observations are used.

The criteria "AIC", "BIC", and "cAIC" require estimation and model selection for all possible pairs. This is computationally expensive and much slower than "tau" or "rho". The user can also specify a custom function to calculate the edge weights. The function has to be of type function(u1, u2, weights) ... and must return a numeric value. The weights argument must exist, but does not has to be used. For example, "tau" (without using weights) can be implemented as follows:

```
function(u1, u2, weights)
abs(cor(u1, u2, method = "kendall", use = "complete.obs"))
```

The root nodes of C-vine trees are determined similarly by identifying the node with strongest dependencies to all other nodes. That is we take the node with maximum column sum in the empirical Kendall's tau matrix.

Note that a possible way to determine the order of the nodes in the D-vine is to identify a shortest Hamiltonian path in terms of weights  $1 - |\hat{\tau_{ij}}|$ . This can be established for example using the

142 RVineStructureSelect

package TSP. Example code is shown below.

#### Value

An RVineMatrix object with the selected structure (RVM\$Matrix) and families (RVM\$family) as well as sequentially estimated parameters stored in RVM\$par and RVM\$par2. The object is augmented by the following information about the fit:

se, se2 standard errors for the parameter estimates; note that these are only approximate

since they do not account for the sequential nature of the estimation,

nobs number of observations,

logLik, pair.logLik

log likelihood (overall and pairwise)

AIC, pair.AIC Aikaike's Informaton Criterion (overall and pairwise),
BIC, pair.BIC Bayesian's Informaton Criterion (overall and pairwise),

emptau matrix of empirical values of Kendall's tau,

p.value.indeptest

matrix of p-values of the independence test.

#### Note

For a comprehensive summary of the vine copula model, use summary(object); to see all its contents, use str(object).

#### Author(s)

Jeffrey Dissmann, Eike Brechmann, Ulf Schepsmeier, Thomas Nagler

# References

Brechmann, E. C., C. Czado, and K. Aas (2012). Truncated regular vines in high dimensions with applications to financial data. Canadian Journal of Statistics 40 (1), 68-85.

Dissmann, J. F., E. C. Brechmann, C. Czado, and D. Kurowicka (2013). Selecting and estimating regular vine copulae and application to financial returns. Computational Statistics & Data Analysis, 59 (1), 52-69.

#### See Also

RVineMatrix, BiCop, RVineCopSelect, plot.RVineMatrix, contour.RVineMatrix, foreach

```
# load data set
data(daxreturns)

# select the R-vine structure, families and parameters
# using only the first 4 variables and the first 250 observations
# we allow for the copula families: Gauss, t, Clayton, Gumbel, Frank and Joe
```

RVineTreePlot 143

```
daxreturns <- daxreturns[1:250, 1:4]</pre>
RVM <- RVineStructureSelect(daxreturns, c(1:6), progress = TRUE)</pre>
## see the object's content or a summary
str(RVM)
summary(RVM)
## inspect the fitted model using plots
## Not run: plot(RVM) # tree structure
contour(RVM) # contour plots of all pair-copulas
## estimate a C-vine copula model with only Clayton, Gumbel and Frank copulas
CVM <- RVineStructureSelect(daxreturns, c(3,4,5), "CVine")</pre>
## determine the order of the nodes in a D-vine using the package TSP
library(TSP)
d <- dim(daxreturns)[2]</pre>
M <- 1 - abs(TauMatrix(daxreturns))</pre>
hamilton <- insert_dummy(TSP(M), label = "cut")</pre>
sol <- solve_TSP(hamilton, method = "repetitive_nn")</pre>
order <- cut_tour(sol, "cut")</pre>
DVM <- D2RVine(order, family = rep(0,d*(d-1)/2), par = rep(0, d*(d-1)/2))
RVineCopSelect(daxreturns, c(1:6), DVM$Matrix)
```

RVineTreePlot

*Visualization of R-Vine Tree Structure* 

# Description

Function is deprecated since VineCopula 2.0. Use plot.RVineMatrix instead.

## Usage

```
RVineTreePlot(x, tree = "ALL", type = 0, edge.labels = NULL,
legend.pos = "bottomleft", interactive = FALSE, ...)
```

# **Arguments**

X	RVineMatrix object.
tree	"ALL" or integer vector; specifies which trees are plotted.
type	<ul> <li>integer; specifies how to make use of variable names:</li> <li>0 = variable names are ignored,</li> <li>1 = variable names are used to annotate vertices,</li> <li>2 = uses numbers in plot and adds a legend for variable names.</li> </ul>
edge.labels	character; either a vector of edge labels or one of the following: "family" = pair-copula family abbreviation (see BiCopName), "par" = pair-copula parameters,

"tau" = pair-copula Kendall's tau (by conversion of parameters)

"family-par" = pair-copula family and parameters
"family-tau" = pair-copula family and Kendall's tau.

legend. pos the x argument for legend.

interactive logical; if TRUE, the user is asked to adjust the positioning of vertices with his

mouse.

... Arguments passed to plot.network.

## Author(s)

Thomas Nagler

## See Also

plot.RVineMatrix

RVineVuongTest

Vuong Test Comparing Two R-Vine Copula Models

# **Description**

This function performs a Vuong test between two d-dimensional R-vine copula models as specified by their RVineMatrix objects.

# Usage

RVineVuongTest(data, RVM1, RVM2)

# **Arguments**

An N x d data matrix (with uniform margins).

RVM1, RVM2

RVineMatrix objects of models 1 and 2.

## **Details**

The likelihood-ratio based test proposed by Vuong (1989) can be used for comparing non-nested models. For this let  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  be two competing vine copulas in terms of their densities and with estimated parameter sets  $\hat{\theta}_1$  and  $\hat{\theta}_2$ . We then compute the standardized sum,  $\nu$ , of the log differences of their pointwise likelihoods  $m_i := \log \left[\frac{c_1(u_i|\hat{\theta}_1)}{c_2(u_i|\hat{\theta}_2)}\right]$  for observations  $u_i \in [0,1], \ i=1,...,N$ , i.e.,

$$\mathrm{statistic} := \nu = \frac{\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{N} m_i}{\sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{N} \left(m_i - \bar{m}\right)^2}}.$$

Vuong (1989) shows that  $\nu$  is asymptotically standard normal. According to the null-hypothesis

$$H_0: E[m_i] = 0 \ \forall i = 1, ..., N,$$

RVineVuongTest 145

we hence prefer vine model 1 to vine model 2 at level  $\alpha$  if

$$\nu > \Phi^{-1} \left( 1 - \frac{\alpha}{2} \right),\,$$

where  $\Phi^{-1}$  denotes the inverse of the standard normal distribution function. If  $\nu < -\Phi^{-1}\left(1 - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)$  we choose model 2. If, however,  $|\nu| \leq \Phi^{-1}\left(1 - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)$ , no decision among the models is possible.

Like AIC and BIC, the Vuong test statistic may be corrected for the number of parameters used in the models. There are two possible corrections; the Akaike and the Schwarz corrections, which correspond to the penalty terms in the AIC and the BIC, respectively.

#### Value

statistic, statistic.Akaike, statistic.Schwarz

Test statistics without correction, with Akaike correction and with Schwarz correction.

p.value, p.value.Akaike, p.value.Schwarz

P-values of tests without correction, with Akaike correction and with Schwarz correction.

#### Author(s)

Jeffrey Dissmann, Eike Brechmann

#### References

Vuong, Q. H. (1989). Ratio tests for model selection and non-nested hypotheses. Econometrica 57 (2), 307-333.

# See Also

RVineClarkeTest, RVineAIC, RVineBIC

```
# vine structure selection time-consuming (~ 20 sec)

# load data set
data(daxreturns)

# select the R-vine structure, families and parameters
RVM <- RVineStructureSelect(daxreturns[,1:5], c(1:6))

# select the C-vine structure, families and parameters
CVM <- RVineStructureSelect(daxreturns[,1:5], c(1:6), type = "CVine")

# compare the two models based on the data
vuong <- RVineVuongTest(daxreturns[,1:5], RVM, CVM)
vuong$statistic
vuong$statistic.Schwarz
vuong$p.value</pre>
```

146 surClaytonCopula

```
vuong$p.value.Schwarz
```

surClaytonCopula

Survival and Rotated Clayton Copulas

# Description

These are wrappers to functions from VineCopula-package

# Usage

```
surClaytonCopula(param = 1)
```

# Arguments

param

A single parameter defining the Copula.

#### Value

An object of class surClaytonCopula, r90ClaytonCopula or r270ClaytonCopula respectively.

# Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

```
library(copula) persp(surClaytonCopula(1.5), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10)) \\ persp(r90ClaytonCopula(-1.5), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10)) \\ persp(r270ClaytonCopula(-1.5), dCopula(-1.5), dCopu
```

surClaytonCopula-class 147

```
{\it Classes} \qquad {\it "surClaytonCopula", means} \qquad {\it classes} \qquad {\it "surClaytonCopula", means} \qquad {\it and means} \qquad
```

## Description

A class representing rotated versions of the Clayton copula family (survival, 90 and 270 degree rotated).

## **Objects from the Class**

```
Objects can be created by calls of the form new("surClaytonCopula", ...), new("r90ClaytonCopula", ...) and new("r270ClaytonCopula", ...) or by the function surClaytonCopula, r90ClaytonCopula and r270ClaytonCopula respectively.
```

#### Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

#### See Also

VineCopula-package

#### **Examples**

```
library(copula)

persp(surClaytonCopula(.5),dCopula,zlim=c(0,10))
persp(r90ClaytonCopula(-.5),dCopula,zlim=c(0,10))
persp(r270ClaytonCopula(-.5),dCopula,zlim=c(0,10))
```

surGumbelCopula

Survival and Rotated Gumbel Copulas

# **Description**

These are wrappers to functions from VineCopula-package

## Usage

```
surGumbelCopula(param = 1)
```

#### **Arguments**

param

A single parameter defining the Copula.

#### Value

An object of class surGumbelCopula, r90GumbelCopula or r270GumbelCopula respectively.

#### Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

# **Examples**

```
library(copula) persp(surGumbelCopula(1.5), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10)) \\ persp(r90GumbelCopula(-1.5), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10)) \\ persp(r270GumbelCopula(-1.5), dCopula(-1.5), dCopula(-1.5
```

```
 surGumbelCopula-class \begin{tabular}{ll} $Classes$ & "surGumbelCopula", & "r90GumbelCopula" & and & "r270GumbelCopula" & & \\ \end{tabular}
```

# Description

A class representing rotated versions of the Gumbel copula family (survival, 90 and 270 degree rotated).

# **Objects from the Class**

```
Objects can be created by calls of the form new("surGumbelCopula", ...), new("r90GumbelCopula", ...) and new("r270GumbelCopula", ...) or by the function surGumbelCopula, r90GumbelCopula and r270GumbelCopula respectively.
```

#### Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

# See Also

VineCopula-package

TauMatrix 149

# **Examples**

```
library(copula)
persp(surGumbelCopula(1.5),dCopula,zlim=c(0,10))
persp(r90GumbelCopula(-1.5),dCopula,zlim=c(0,10))
persp(r270GumbelCopula(-1.5),dCopula,zlim=c(0,10))
```

TauMatrix

Matrix of Empirical Kendall's Tau Values

## **Description**

This function computes the empirical Kendall's tau using the algorithm by Knight (1966).

## Usage

```
TauMatrix(data, weights = NA)
```

# Arguments

data An N x d data matrix.

weights Numerical; weights for each observation (optional).

#### Value

Matrix of the empirical Kendall's taus.

# Author(s)

Ulf Schepsmeier

#### References

Knight, W. R. (1966). A computer method for calculating Kendall's tau with ungrouped data. Journal of the American Statistical Association 61 (314), 436-439.

# See Also

```
BiCopTau2Par, BiCopPar2Tau, BiCopEst
```

150 tawnT1Copula

#### **Examples**

```
data(daxreturns)
Data <- as.matrix(daxreturns)
# compute the empirical Kendall's taus
TauMatrix(Data)</pre>
```

tawnT1Copula

Constructor of the Tawn Type 1 Family and Rotated Versions thereof

# Description

Constructs an object of the tawnT1Copula (survival sur, 90 degree rotated r90 and 270 degree rotated r270) family for given parameters.

### Usage

```
tawnT1Copula(param = c(2, 0.5))
```

#### **Arguments**

param

The parameter param defines the copula through param1 and param2.

#### Value

```
One of the Tawn type 1 copula classes (tawnT1Copula, surTawnT1Copula, r90TawnT1Copula, r270TawnT1Copula).
```

#### Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

#### See Also

tawnT2Copula and the package VineCopula-package for implementation details.

```
library(copula)

persp(tawnT1Copula(), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10))
persp(surTawnT1Copula(), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10))
persp(r90TawnT1Copula(), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10))
persp(r270TawnT1Copula(), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10))
```

tawnT1Copula-class 151

tawnT1Copula-class

Class "tawnT1Copula"

# **Description**

S4-class representation of the Tawn Copula family of type 1 and rotated versions there of.

# **Objects from the Class**

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("tawnT1Copula", ...), or through the explicit constructors tawnT1Copula, surTawnT1Copula, r90TawnT1Copula and r270TawnT1Copula respectively.

#### Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

#### See Also

tawnT2Copula and the package VineCopula-package for implementation details.

# **Examples**

```
showClass("tawnT1Copula")
```

tawnT2Copula

Constructor of the Tawn Type 2 Family and Rotated Versions thereof

## **Description**

Constructs an object of the tawnT2Copula (survival sur, 90 degree rotated r90 and 270 degree rotated r270) family for given parameters.

## Usage

```
tawnT2Copula(param = c(2, 0.5))
```

## **Arguments**

param

The parameter param defines the copula through param1 and param2.

#### Value

One of the Tawn type 2 copula classes (tawnT2Copula, surTawnT2Copula, r90TawnT2Copula, r270TawnT2Copula).

152 tawnT2Copula-class

#### Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

#### See Also

tawnT2Copula and the package VineCopula-package for implementation details.

# **Examples**

```
library(copula)

persp(tawnT2Copula(), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10))
persp(surTawnT2Copula(), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10))
persp(r90TawnT2Copula(), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10))
persp(r270TawnT2Copula(), dCopula, zlim = c(0,10))
```

tawnT2Copula-class

Class "tawnT2Copula"

# Description

S4-class representation of the Tawn Copula family of type 2 and rotated versions there of.

#### **Objects from the Class**

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("tawnT2Copula", ...), or through the explicit constructors tawnT2Copula, surTawnT2Copula, r90TawnT2Copula and r270TawnT2Copula respectively.

## Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

#### See Also

tawnT1Copula and the package VineCopula-package for implementation details.

```
showClass("tawnT2Copula")
```

vineCopula 153

|--|

## **Description**

Constructs an instance of the vineCopula class.

# Usage

```
vineCopula(RVM, type = "CVine")
```

# Arguments

RVM An object of class RVineMatrix generated from RVineMatrix in the package

VineCopula-package or an integer (e.g. 4L) defining the dimension (an inde-

pendent Gaussian C-vine of this dimension will be constructed).

type A predefined type if only the dimension is provided and ignored otherwise, the

default is a canonical vine

#### Value

An instance of the vineCopula class.

# Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

# References

Aas, K., C. Czado, A. Frigessi, and H. Bakken (2009). Pair-copula constructions of multiple dependence Insurance: Mathematics and Economics 44 (2), 182-198.

```
# a C-vine of independent copulas
vine <- vineCopula(4L, "CVine")
library(copula)
library(lattice)
cloud(V1 ~ V2 + V3, as.data.frame(rCopula(500, vine)))</pre>
```

vineCopula-class

vineCopula-class

Class "vineCopula"

# **Description**

A class representing vine copulas in a object oriented implementations. Many functions go back to the package VineCopula-package

# **Objects from the Class**

Objects can be created by calls of the form new("vineCopula", ...) or through the function vineCopula.

# Author(s)

Benedikt Graeler

#### References

Aas, K., C. Czado, A. Frigessi, and H. Bakken (2009). Pair-copula constructions of multiple dependence Insurance: Mathematics and Economics 44 (2), 182-198.

#### See Also

RVineMatrix from package VineCopula-package

# Examples

showClass("vineCopula")

# **Index**

*Topic \textasciitildekwd1	plot.BiCop,96
copulaFromFamilyIndex,87	*Topic <b>probabilities</b>
*Topic \textasciitildekwd2	ddCopula, 91
copulaFromFamilyIndex,87	*Topic <b>vine</b>
*Topic classes	RVineCor2pcor, 105
BB1Copula-class, 8	RVineMatrixNormalize, 123
BB6Copula-class, 9	
BB7Copula-class, 11	as.copuladata, 6, 94
BB8Copula-class, 13	
joeBiCopula-class, 93	BB1Copula, 7, 7, 8, 10, 11, 13, 92, 93
surClaytonCopula-class, 147	BB1Copula-class, 8
surGumbelCopula-class, 148	BB6Copula, 7, 8, 8, 9, 11–13, 92, 93
tawnT1Copula-class, 151	BB6Copula-class, 9
tawnT2Copula-class, 152	BB7Copula, 7–10, 10, 11–13, 92, 93
vineCopula-class, 154	BB7Copula-class, 11
*Topic conditional	BB8Copula, 7–12, 12, 13, 92, 93
ddCopula, 91	BB8Copula-class, 13
*Topic <b>copula</b>	BetaMatrix, 13
BB1Copula, 7	BiCop, 14, 16, 18, 19, 24, 26, 28, 30, 31, 33,
surClaytonCopula, 146	34, 37, 42–47, 49, 50, 56, 57, 64, 69,
surGumbelCopula, 147	70, 72, 73, 76, 78, 79, 96, 102, 104,
tawnT1Copula, 150	135, 140, 142
tawnT2Copula, 150	BiCopCDF, 17, 26, 43, 50, 63, 73, 128
*Topic <b>correlation</b>	BiCopCheck, 19
*	BiCopChiPlot, 21, 54, 57, 60
RVineCor2pcor, 105	BiCopCompare, 23
*Topic derivative	BiCopCondSim, 24
ddCopula, 91	BiCopDeriv, 27, 31, 40, 47, 112, 114, 139
*Topic distribution	BiCopDeriv2, 28, 29, 40, 45, 47, 112, 114, 139
BB1Copula, 7	BiCopEst, 16, 31, 36, 37, 76, 125, 134, 135,
tawnT1Copula, 150	149
tawnT2Copula, 151	BiCopEstList, 35
vineCopula, 153	BiCopGofTest, 37, 51, 54, 83, 110
*Topic <b>mulitvariate</b>	BiCopHfunc, 16, 19, 40, 50, 73, 117, 131
vineCopula, 153	BiCopHfunc1 (BiCopHfunc), 40
*Topic <b>partial</b>	BiCopHfunc2 (BiCopHfunc), 40
ddCopula, 91	BiCopHfuncDeriv, 28, 31, 43, 45, 47, 112,
RVineCor2pcor, 105	114, 139
*Topic <b>plot</b>	BiCopHfuncDeriv2, 45, 112, 114, 139
contour.RVineMatrix,86	BiCopHinv, <i>43</i> , 48

BiCopHinv1 (BiCopHinv), 48	dduCopula,matrix,r270ClaytonCopula-method
BiCopHinv2 (BiCopHinv), 48	(surClaytonCopula-class), 147
BiCopIndTest, 40, 51, 75, 76, 103, 140	dduCopula,matrix,r270GumbelCopula-method
BiCopKDE, 52, 57, 94	(surGumbelCopula-class), 148
BiCopKPlot, 22, 53, 57, 60	dduCopula,matrix,r270JoeBiCopula-method
BiCopLambda, 22, 54, 55, 60, 96	(joeBiCopula-class), 93
BiCopMetaContour, 22, 54, 57, 57	dduCopula,matrix,r270TawnT1Copula-method
BiCopName, 60, 86, 87, 143	(tawnT1Copula-class), 151
BiCopPar2Beta, <i>14</i> , 62, <i>128</i>	dduCopula,matrix,r270TawnT2Copula-method
BiCopPar2TailDep, 65	(tawnT2Copula-class), 152
BiCopPar2Tau, 33, 34, 51, 67, 68, 80, 129, 149	dduCopula,matrix,r90BB1Copula-method
BiCopPDF, 16, 19, 26, 43, 50, 71	(BB1Copula-class), 8
BiCopSelect, 16, 34, 51, 73, 83, 102, 104, 140	dduCopula,matrix,r90BB6Copula-method
BiCopSim, 16, 19, 73, 77, 137	(BB6Copula-class), 9
BiCopTau2Par, 33, 34, 51, 70, 79, 149	dduCopula,matrix,r90BB7Copula-method
BiCopVuongClarke, 40, 81	(BB7Copula-class), 11
	dduCopula,matrix,r90BB8Copula-method
C2RVine, 84, 89, 120	(BB8Copula-class), 13
contour, <i>52</i> , <i>96</i>	dduCopula,matrix,r90ClaytonCopula-method
contour.BiCop, 16, 57	(surClaytonCopula-class), 147
contour.BiCop(plot.BiCop), 96	dduCopula,matrix,r90GumbelCopula-method
contour.RVineMatrix, 86, 104, 135, 142	(surGumbelCopula-class), 148
copula, 87, 88, 97	dduCopula,matrix,r90JoeBiCopula-method
copulaFromFamilyIndex, 87	(joeBiCopula-class), 93
	dduCopula,matrix,r90TawnT1Copula-method
D2RVine, 85, 88, 120	(tawnT1Copula-class), 151
daxreturns, 90	dduCopula,matrix,r90TawnT2Copula-method
dCopula, 91	(tawnT2Copula-class), 152
ddCopula, 91	dduCopula,matrix,surBB1Copula-method
dduCopula (ddCopula), 91	(BB1Copula-class), 8
dduCopula,matrix,BB1Copula-method	dduCopula,matrix,surBB6Copula-method
(BB1Copula-class), 8	(BB6Copula-class), 9
dduCopula,matrix,BB6Copula-method	dduCopula,matrix,surBB7Copula-method
(BB6Copula-class), 9	(BB7Copula-class), 11
dduCopula,matrix,BB7Copula-method	dduCopula,matrix,surBB8Copula-method
(BB7Copula-class), 11	(BB8Copula-class), 13
dduCopula,matrix,BB8Copula-method	dduCopula,matrix,surClaytonCopula-method
(BB8Copula-class), 13	(surClaytonCopula-class), 147
dduCopula,matrix,joeBiCopula-method	dduCopula,matrix,surGumbelCopula-method
(joeBiCopula-class), 93	(surGumbelCopula-class), 148
dduCopula,matrix,r270BB1Copula-method	dduCopula,matrix,surJoeBiCopula-method
(BB1Copula-class), 8	(joeBiCopula-class), 93
dduCopula, matrix, r270BB6Copula-method	dduCopula, matrix, surTawnT1Copula-method
(BB6Copula-class), 9	(tawnT1Copula-class), 151
dduCopula,matrix,r270BB7Copula-method	dduCopula, matrix, surTawnT2Copula-method
(BB7Copula-class), 11	(tawnT2Copula-class), 152
dduCopula,matrix,r270BB8Copula-method	dduCopula, matrix, tawnT1Copula-method
(BB8Copula-class), 13	(tawnT1Copula-class), 151

dduCopula, matrix, tawn12Copula-method	dduCopula, numeric, surBBICopula-method
(tawnT2Copula-class), 152	(BB1Copula-class), 8
dduCopula, numeric, BB1Copula-method	dduCopula,numeric,surBB6Copula-method
(BB1Copula-class), 8	(BB6Copula-class), 9
dduCopula,numeric,BB6Copula-method	dduCopula,numeric,surBB7Copula-method
(BB6Copula-class), 9	(BB7Copula-class), 11
dduCopula,numeric,BB7Copula-method	dduCopula,numeric,surBB8Copula-method
(BB7Copula-class), 11	(BB8Copula-class), 13
dduCopula,numeric,BB8Copula-method	dduCopula,numeric,surClaytonCopula-method
(BB8Copula-class), 13	(surClaytonCopula-class), 147
dduCopula,numeric,joeBiCopula-method	dduCopula,numeric,surGumbelCopula-method
(joeBiCopula-class), 93	(surGumbelCopula-class), 148
dduCopula,numeric,r270BB1Copula-method	dduCopula,numeric,surJoeBiCopula-method
(BB1Copula-class), 8	(joeBiCopula-class), 93
dduCopula,numeric,r270BB6Copula-method	dduCopula,numeric,surTawnT1Copula-method
(BB6Copula-class), 9	(tawnT1Copula-class), 151
dduCopula,numeric,r270BB7Copula-method	dduCopula,numeric,surTawnT2Copula-method
(BB7Copula-class), 11	(tawnT2Copula-class), 152
dduCopula,numeric,r270BB8Copula-method	dduCopula,numeric,tawnT1Copula-method
(BB8Copula-class), 13	(tawnT1Copula-class), 151
dduCopula,numeric,r270ClaytonCopula-method	dduCopula,numeric,tawnT2Copula-method
(surClaytonCopula-class), 147	(tawnT2Copula-class), 152
dduCopula,numeric,r270GumbelCopula-method	ddvCopula (ddCopula), 91
(surGumbelCopula-class), 148	ddvCopula,matrix,BB1Copula-method
dduCopula,numeric,r270JoeBiCopula-method	(BB1Copula-class), 8
(joeBiCopula-class), 93	ddvCopula,matrix,BB6Copula-method
dduCopula,numeric,r270TawnT1Copula-method	(BB6Copula-class), 9
(tawnT1Copula-class), 151	ddvCopula,matrix,BB7Copula-method
dduCopula,numeric,r270TawnT2Copula-method	(BB7Copula-class), 11
(tawnT2Copula-class), 152	ddvCopula,matrix,BB8Copula-method
dduCopula,numeric,r90BB1Copula-method	(BB8Copula-class), 13
(BB1Copula-class), 8	ddvCopula,matrix,joeBiCopula-method
dduCopula,numeric,r90BB6Copula-method	(joeBiCopula-class), 93
(BB6Copula-class), 9	ddvCopula,matrix,r270BB1Copula-method
dduCopula,numeric,r90BB7Copula-method	(BB1Copula-class), 8
(BB7Copula-class), 11	ddvCopula,matrix,r270BB6Copula-method
dduCopula,numeric,r90BB8Copula-method	(BB6Copula-class), 9
(BB8Copula-class), 13	ddvCopula,matrix,r270BB7Copula-method
dduCopula,numeric,r90ClaytonCopula-method	(BB7Copula-class), 11
(surClaytonCopula-class), 147	ddvCopula,matrix,r270BB8Copula-method
dduCopula,numeric,r90GumbelCopula-method	(BB8Copula-class), 13
(surGumbelCopula-class), 148	ddvCopula,matrix,r270ClaytonCopula-method
dduCopula,numeric,r90JoeBiCopula-method	(surClaytonCopula-class), 147
(joeBiCopula-class), 93	ddvCopula,matrix,r270GumbelCopula-method
dduCopula,numeric,r90TawnT1Copula-method	(surGumbelCopula-class), 148
(tawnT1Copula-class), 151	ddvCopula,matrix,r270JoeBiCopula-method
dduCopula,numeric,r90TawnT2Copula-method	(joeBiCopula-class), 93
(tawnT2Copula-class), 152	ddvCopula,matrix,r270TawnT1Copula-method

(tawn) (Copula-class), 151	(BB/Copula-class), II
ddvCopula,matrix,r270TawnT2Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,BB8Copula-method
(tawnT2Copula-class), 152	(BB8Copula-class), 13
ddvCopula,matrix,r90BB1Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,joeBiCopula-method
(BB1Copula-class), 8	(joeBiCopula-class), 93
ddvCopula,matrix,r90BB6Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r270BB1Copula-method
(BB6Copula-class), 9	(BB1Copula-class), 8
ddvCopula,matrix,r90BB7Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r270BB6Copula-method
(BB7Copula-class), 11	(BB6Copula-class), 9
ddvCopula,matrix,r90BB8Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r270BB7Copula-method
(BB8Copula-class), 13	(BB7Copula-class), 11
ddvCopula,matrix,r90ClaytonCopula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r270BB8Copula-method
(surClaytonCopula-class), 147	(BB8Copula-class), 13
ddvCopula,matrix,r90GumbelCopula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r270ClaytonCopula-method
(surGumbelCopula-class), 148	(surClaytonCopula-class), 147
ddvCopula,matrix,r90JoeBiCopula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r270GumbelCopula-method
(joeBiCopula-class), 93	(surGumbelCopula-class), 148
ddvCopula,matrix,r90TawnT1Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r270JoeBiCopula-method
(tawnT1Copula-class), 151	(joeBiCopula-class), 93
ddvCopula,matrix,r90TawnT2Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r270TawnT1Copula-method
(tawnT2Copula-class), 152	(tawnT1Copula-class), 151
ddvCopula,matrix,surBB1Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r270TawnT2Copula-method
(BB1Copula-class), 8	(tawnT2Copula-class), 152
ddvCopula,matrix,surBB6Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r90BB1Copula-method
(BB6Copula-class), 9	(BB1Copula-class), 8
ddvCopula,matrix,surBB7Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r90BB6Copula-method
(BB7Copula-class), 11	(BB6Copula-class), 9
ddvCopula,matrix,surBB8Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r90BB7Copula-method
(BB8Copula-class), 13	(BB7Copula-class), 11
ddvCopula,matrix,surClaytonCopula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r90BB8Copula-method
(surClaytonCopula-class), 147	(BB8Copula-class), 13
ddvCopula,matrix,surGumbelCopula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r90ClaytonCopula-method
(surGumbelCopula-class), 148	(surClaytonCopula-class), 147
ddvCopula,matrix,surJoeBiCopula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r90GumbelCopula-method
(joeBiCopula-class), 93	(surGumbelCopula-class), 148
ddvCopula,matrix,surTawnT1Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r90JoeBiCopula-method
(tawnT1Copula-class), 151	(joeBiCopula-class), 93
ddvCopula,matrix,surTawnT2Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r90TawnT1Copula-method
(tawnT2Copula-class), 152	(tawnT1Copula-class), 151
ddvCopula,matrix,tawnT1Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,r90TawnT2Copula-method
(tawnT1Copula-class), 151	(tawnT2Copula-class), 152
ddvCopula,matrix,tawnT2Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,surBB1Copula-method
(tawnT2Copula-class), 152	(BB1Copula-class), 8
ddvCopula,numeric,BB1Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,surBB6Copula-method
(BB1Copula-class), 8	(BB6Copula-class), 9
ddvCopula, numeric, BB6Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,surBB7Copula-method
(BB6Copula-class), 9	(BB7Copula-class), 11
ddvCopula,numeric,BB7Copula-method	ddvCopula,numeric,surBB8Copula-method

(BB8Copula-class), 13	kendallDistribution,joeBiCopula-method
ddvCopula,numeric,surClaytonCopula-method	(joeBiCopula-class), 93
(surClaytonCopula-class), 147	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
ddvCopula,numeric,surGumbelCopula-method	legend, 86, 87, 144
(surGumbelCopula-class), 148	logical, 97
ddvCopula,numeric,surJoeBiCopula-method	
(joeBiCopula-class), 93	NULL, <i>136</i>
ddvCopula,numeric,surTawnT1Copula-method	
(tawnT1Copula-class), 151	optim, <i>126</i>
ddvCopula, numeric, surTawnT2Copula-method	
(tawnT2Copula-class), 152	pairs, <i>94</i>
ddvCopula, numeric, tawnT1Copula-method	pairs.copuladata, $6,93$
(tawnT1Copula-class), 151	par, <i>94</i>
ddvCopula, numeric, tawnT2Copula-method	pCopula, 91
(tawnT2Copula-class), 152	plot.BiCop, 16, 52, 86, 87, 96
dexp, 59	plot.network, 86, 87, 144
	plot.RVineMatrix, 104, 135, 142-144
dgamma, 59	plot.RVineMatrix (contour.RVineMatrix),
dt, 59	86
fitCanula twoDaramPiCan-mathad	pobs, 6, 97
fitCopula, twoParamBiCop-method	pobs, 6, 77
(BB8Copula-class), 13	r270BB1Copula, 7, 8
fitCopula, vineCopula-method	r270BB1Copula (BB1Copula), 7
(vineCopula-class), 154	r270BB1Copula-class (BB1Copula-class), 8
foreach, 103, 104, 134, 135, 141, 142	r270BB6Copula, 9
gotKondallDistr PR1Conula-mothod	r270BB6Copula (BB6Copula), 8
getKendallDistr,BB1Copula-method (BB1Copula-class),8	r270BB6Copula-class (BB6Copula-class), 9
	r270BB7Copula, <i>10</i> , <i>11</i>
getKendallDistr,BB6Copula-method	r270BB7Copula (BB7Copula), 10
(BB6Copula-class), 9	r270BB7Copula-class (BB7Copula-class),
getKendallDistr,BB7Copula-method	11
(BB7Copula-class), 11	r270BB8Copula, <i>12</i> , <i>13</i>
getKendallDistr,BB8Copula-method	r270BB8Copula (BB8Copula), 12
(BB8Copula-class), 13	r270BB8Copula-class (BB8Copula-class),
getKendallDistr,joeBiCopula-method	13
(joeBiCopula-class), 93	r270ClaytonCopula, <i>146</i> , <i>147</i>
iDig	
joeBiCopula, 92, 92, 93	r270ClaytonCopula (surClaytonCopula),
joeBiCopula-class, 93	
joeCopula, <i>7–13</i> , <i>92</i> , <i>93</i>	r270ClaytonCopula-class
L.J	(surClaytonCopula-class), 147
kdecop, <i>52</i> , <i>53</i>	r270GumbelCopula, 148
kendallDistribution,BB1Copula-method	r270GumbelCopula (surGumbelCopula), 147
(BB1Copula-class), 8	r270GumbelCopula-class
kendallDistribution,BB6Copula-method	(surGumbelCopula-class), 148
(BB6Copula-class), 9	r270JoeBiCopula, 92, 93
kendallDistribution,BB7Copula-method	r270JoeBiCopula (joeBiCopula), 92
(BB7Copula-class), 11	r270JoeBiCopula-class
kendallDistribution,BB8Copula-method	(joeBiCopula-class), 93
(BB8Copula-class), 13	r270TawnT1Copula, <i>150</i> , <i>151</i>

r270TawnT1Copula (tawnT1Copula), 150	126, 139
r270TawnT1Copula-class	RVineHessian, 28, 31, 45, 47, 106, 112, 113,
(tawnT1Copula-class), 151	125, 126, 139
r270TawnT2Copula, 151, 152	RVineLogLik, 43, 50, 99, 115, 131
r270TawnT2Copula (tawnT2Copula), 151	RVineMatrix, 85, 87, 89, 98, 100, 103-106,
r270TawnT2Copula-class	111–114, 116–118, 118, 119, 120,
(tawnT2Copula-class), 152	122–126, 128, 129, 131, 132,
r90BB1Copula, 7, 8	134–139, 142, 144, 153, 154
r90BB1Copula (BB1Copula), 7	RVineMatrixCheck, 120, 121, 124
r90BB1Copula-class(BB1Copula-class), 8	RVineMatrixNormalize, 123
r90BB6Copula, 9	RVineMatrixSample, 124
r90BB6Copula (BB6Copula), 8	RVineMLE, <i>112</i> , <i>114</i> , <i>117</i> , 125, <i>131</i>
r90BB6Copula-class (BB6Copula-class), 9	RVinePar2Beta, <i>14</i> , 127
r90BB7Copula, <i>10</i> , <i>11</i>	RVinePar2Tau, 129
r90BB7Copula (BB7Copula), 10	RVinePcor2cor (RVineCor2pcor), 105
r90BB7Copula-class (BB7Copula-class), 11	RVinePDF, 130
r90BB8Copula, <i>12</i> , <i>13</i>	RVinePIT, 108, 110, 132
•	RVineSeqEst, 34, 43, 50, 120, 125, 126, 134
r90BB8Copula (BB8Copula), 12	RVineSim, 26, 79, 120, 136
r90BB8Copula-class (BB8Copula-class), 13	RVineStdError, 138
r90ClaytonCopula, 146, 147	RVineStructureSelect, 51, 76, 90, 103, 120,
r90ClaytonCopula (surClaytonCopula), 146	126, 140
r90ClaytonCopula-class	RVineTreePlot, 62, 143
(surClaytonCopula-class), 147	RVineVuongTest, 82, 83, 99, 101, 144
r90GumbelCopula, 148	
r90GumbelCopula (surGumbelCopula), 147	surBB1Copula, 7, 8
r90GumbelCopula-class	surBB1Copula (BB1Copula), 7
(surGumbelCopula-class), 148	surBB1Copula-class (BB1Copula-class), 8
r90JoeBiCopula, 92, 93	surBB6Copula, 9
r90JoeBiCopula (joeBiCopula), 92	surBB6Copula (BB6Copula), 8
r90JoeBiCopula-class	surBB6Copula-class (BB6Copula-class), 9
(joeBiCopula-class), 93	surBB7Copula, <i>10</i> , <i>11</i>
r90TawnT1Copula, <i>150</i> , <i>151</i>	surBB7Copula (BB7Copula), 10
r90TawnT1Copula (tawnT1Copula), 150	surBB7Copula-class (BB7Copula-class), 11
r90TawnT1Copula-class	surBB8Copula, <i>12</i> , <i>13</i>
(tawnT1Copula-class), 151	surBB8Copula (BB8Copula), 12
r90TawnT2Copula, <i>151</i> , <i>152</i>	surBB8Copula-class (BB8Copula-class), 13
r90TawnT2Copula (tawnT2Copula), 151	surClaytonCopula, <i>146</i> , 146, <i>147</i>
r90TawnT2Copula-class	surClaytonCopula-class, 147
(tawnT2Copula-class), 152	surGumbelCopula, 147, 148
rank, 97	surGumbelCopula-class, 148
RVineAIC, 98, 101, 117, 131, 145	surJoeBiCopula, 92, 93
RVineBIC, 101, 117, 131, 145	surJoeBiCopula (joeBiCopula), 92
RVineBIC (RVineAIC), 98	surJoeBiCopula-class
RVineClarkeTest, 82, 83, 99, 100, 145	(joeBiCopula-class), 93
RVineCopSelect, 51, 76, 102, 120, 140, 142	surTawnT1Copula, <i>150</i> , <i>151</i>
RVineCor2pcor, 105	surTawnT1Copula (tawnT1Copula), 150
RVineGofTest, 106, 133	surTawnT1Copula-class
RVineGrad, 28, 31, 45, 47, 106, 110, 114, 125,	(tawnT1Copula-class), 151